

The Alpha and Omega of Creation

Teachings from Heaven



Special Edition – 17

The Real Story of the Flood

Nephilim Secrets Revealed?



Preserved and presented by:
Samuel

The Alpha and Omega of Creation

Special Edition Series

SE_1. The Seven Rosaries of Mary

SE_2. Passion and Death of Jesus Christ

SE_3. 40 Day Rosary of Lent

SE_4. Advent Rosary and The Epiphany of the Lord

SE_5. The Holy Family Flees to Egypt

SE_6. The Miracle Work of the Child Jesus in Egypt

SE_7. The Departure of the Holy Family from Egypt

SE_8. Moses and the Ten Commandments

SE_9. The Vineyard Workers of the Lord

SE_10. Becoming a Child of God

SE_11. Pathway to the Holy Spirit

SE_12. Continuation of Life after Death

SE_13. The Primordial Essence of God

SE_14. Knowledge/Progress Advanced Civilization of Adam

SE_15. People of the Star Worlds and the Cosmic Man

SE_16. The Fallen Angels – who are they?

SE_17. The Real Story of the Flood

SE_18. The Three Days of Darkness

SE_19. The Last Seven Years of Earth

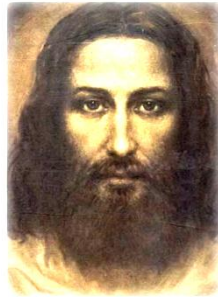
SE_20. The Fall of a Great Nation – WW III – Antichrist

SE_21. The Seventh Trumpet – Woe- judgement Day

Bonus – The Seven Words of Christ on the Cross

Visit: WWW.AlphaAndOmegaOfCreation.Org

The Alpha and Omega of Creation Series



THE ALPHA
AND THE OMEGA
THE BEGINNING
AND THE END

THE FIRSTBORN OVER
ALL OF CREATION

The Alpha and Omega of Creation Series: God the Father reveals, in great detail, His Divine plan of salvation that leads the soul back to God.

1. **Vol_1_Secrets of Creation:** Reveals the Mysteries of the Primordial God, God's Only Begotten Son, The Secrets of Creation, The World of Thought, Life of Spirits and Cosmic Life, Can Man See God? Mystery of the Holy Trinity, What is the difference between Beings of Light and Angels? How does one obtain Childship to God? Was the Sin of the fallen spirits unforgivable? The Real Original Sin, The Cause and Origin of Creation, The Giant Cosmic Man, My Father's House has many Mansions! God Creates Man
2. **Vol_2_The Soul and Life of Adam and Cain:** Immortality of the Soul, Relationship between Body, Soul and Spirit. What is Man? The Purpose and Reason of Earthly Life, Pre-Adamites, The Creation of Other Human Beings, The Descendants of Adam, Death Enters the World. Where do Prehistoric Animals Come From? How did the Black Race Begin? Adam and Cains Experiments with Genetic Manipulation, Cain's Curse and Fight, The Real Consequences of Original Sin, Man Begins Again and much more. . .
3. **Vol_3_The Childhood of Jesus:** The Messianic Cycle Begins, The Immaculate Conception of Mary, Mary is betrothed to Joseph, God enters the world in the visible image of Jesus, The Star of Bethlehem, The Three Wise Men, Herod's Plot to Kill Jesus, The Family Flees to Egypt, The Childhood of Jesus, The Miracle Work of the Child Jesus, Jesus journey to the Temple, Jesus is Examined in the Temple, Jesus three days in the temple, The Arrival of Joseph and Mary in the Temple, The Death of St Joseph. . .
4. **Vol_4_The Public Life and Passion of Jesus Christ:** 53 Gospel verses explained through the Sermons of Jesus Christ, The Transfiguration of Christ, The Spiritual Significance of the Glorification of Christ. Who is to be the Christ? The Earth as an Altar, Farewell to the Mother, The Passover Supper, The Washing of the Feet, The Parable of the Last Supper and the Bread of Life, Jesus' Victory over Death, The Descent of the Holy Spirit. And, The Passion of Christ, Jesus Descended into the Abyss, The Resurrection and Eternal Life, The Ascension of Jesus, The Coming of the Holy Spirit...
5. **Vol_5_The Holy Spirit and End Time Vineyard Workers:** Section 1: Conditions and Prerequisites for the Outpouring of the Holy Spirit, The Workings of the Spirit, When the Holy Spirit is Present, Gifts of the Spirit, Workings of the Spirit, Wrong Interpretation of the Scriptures, Prerequisites

- for Hearing God's Voice, Dialogue with the Father, Section 2: Vineyard Workers, God's Appointed Servants, Laborers for God's Kingdom, Task to Spread the Truth, The Church of Christ. . .
6. **Vol_6_The Church of Christ:** The Vision of St Stephan, Martyrdom of the Apostles, History of the Ancient Church, Christians of the First Century, The Church of Christ in its Beginning, The Church Becomes an Institution, The Baptism of Jesus, A Great Truth about Salvation, Satan Attacks the Church, The Second Vatican Council, and the Fate of the Roman Catholic Church.
 7. **Vol_7_God Corrects Misguided Teachings and Errors:** Doubting God's Existence, Wrong Images of God, Questioning God's Perfection, False Doctrine about the Trinity, Wrong Interpretations of the Bible, Elimination of a Near End, Distorted Divine Word, Doubting God's Revelations, Wrong Concept of Church, Infallibility of the Head of the Church, Sacraments – Wrong Interpretation of Jesus' Words, Mans Lack of Spiritual Knowledge. . .
 8. **Vol_8_End Time Prophecies:** Our Lady Speaks about 5 Signs, Secularism, Rationalism, Sin Causes War, Battle Between Heaven and Hell, They Will Desecrate the Church, The Stars Will Fall from the Sky, A Generation Without God, Mary's Tears of Blood, St Malachy the 112 Pope, Earths Time, Signs of the Great Tribulation, Climate Change, The World will Crash Down in the End.
 9. **Vol_9_ The Apocalypse and Beyond:** Satan's Century, Progress of Man, Science / Knowledge, Satan Splits and Divides, UFO's, The Nature and Purpose of the Moon, NASA's Project Blue Beam, Space Travel, Inhabitants of Other Worlds, The Huge Red Dragon, The Woman Clothed with The Sun, The Keys that Open the Abyss, WW III, The Earth is Changing, The Fall of Babylon, The Holy Remnant, the New Banishment and the New Earth. . .
 10. **Vol_10_The Spiritual Journey of the Soul:** Every Soul is an Original Spirit, The Souls Process of Pre-Development, Composition of the Soul, Spiritual Rebirth, The Path of Return to God, Overcoming Matter, Immortality of the Soul, The Death Phenomenon, The Souls Fate in the Beyond, Sequence of Events when the Soul Leaves the Body, Beyond the Threshold, The Resurrection of the Body, Entering the Kingdom of Light. . .
 11. **Vol_11_The Last Seven Years of Earth:** The Journey of the Primordial God to the Man God, The Last Seven Years of Earth – The Three Days of Darkness – The Rapture Explained - The Cult World of Freemasonry. The Keys of Peter. .
 12. **Vol_12_Advanced Teachings of the Spirit World:** I Stand at the Door and Knock - and you did not receive Me, Secrets of Life, The Spiritual Sun, The Evil of Human Desires, The Kingdom of Darkness and Unbelief, The Roman Catholic Heaven, A Visit to the Carmelites, The Judgement Seat of Christ, Prerequisite unto Salvation, The Seven Words of Christ on the Cross. . .

A Raging Storm

MV ET:41



Jesus is speaking: "Rise, Oh Christians. One day, to Jesus, who was sleeping, He was shouted to, 'Awaken, oh Master, we are perishing.' However, now, it is God who is shouting to you, 'Awaken, oh Christians, because if you do not awaken, you will perish. The storm is above you.' To old Israel, it was said, 'To your tents, oh Israel' in order to gather them together to defend the religion and the homeland. To you I shout, 'To your tabernacles, oh Christian people. To your faith! To your Lord Jesus Christ! To the Victor [Blessed Virgin] who conquers Satan! Rise! Rekindle the lamp and the fire of faith and charity, and strip off the overly carnal garments which make you dull and lazy and re-clothe yourselves in righteousness.'

You, you only must save yourself. Your victory is in your will. God observes you, but He no longer saves you through His own will. He has done so, many times, and you have turned the victory of salvation into a step-in order to descend into darkness, into the cold, into vice. I said it at the beginning of this work. You have either: laughed, derided, or cursed the little voice who repeated my words to you. However, many, because they were divine, have already been fulfilled.

Do not laugh, do not deride, do not curse these [words]. Receive them. Defend them yourselves, your families, your peace, your well-being, by defending the divine Idea, the Church, and Faith. Satan and his servants seek to strike at the Idea of Church and Faith, that is, the heart, the blood, and the breath which maintains your life, alive. Sorrowful, yes; demanding, yes. But if Satan were to triumph in a world without God, three times woe to you all.

You do not know! I do not lift the veil upon that horror that is already in action, and which is closing its ranks in order to launch the attack. I point out Heaven to you: God; I point out the heart of Christianity to you: My Church; I point out My Word - Truth to you. Defend them so that they may be defended. And meditate well upon my words."

The Teachings of Jesus

Become an Apostle of Truth

Truth only comes from God and before the world can come to an end, as we know it, the truth must be revealed. How will this be done? The Lord will accomplish this by using his prophets; the same way He used the prophets in the Old Testament which also contains the Book of the Prophets.

This work presents the teachings that were given, by the Lord, to the prophets of our time that are located throughout the world. When these teachings are brought together, they present a clear picture of the events that will lead us to the return of Jesus in Glory and the end of a period of salvation.

Jesus is speaking: "All the strands of this Mission are being drawn together to form a pattern. Then, when the various parts are linked and fitted together, like the pieces of a jigsaw, when all the pieces begin to merge, the final picture will become clear." Ref: MDM message Jan 24, 2014

The 'final picture' has been assembled and presented in the twelve volumes of the Alpha and Omega of Creation Series



Become an Apostle of truth by passing on the Lord's teachings to family and friends. The Lord has revealed the past, the present and the future. You can't even begin to comprehend His love for you unless you understand the very beginning, only then will you understand who you really are and how great is His love for you.

In Honor of the Holy Spirit



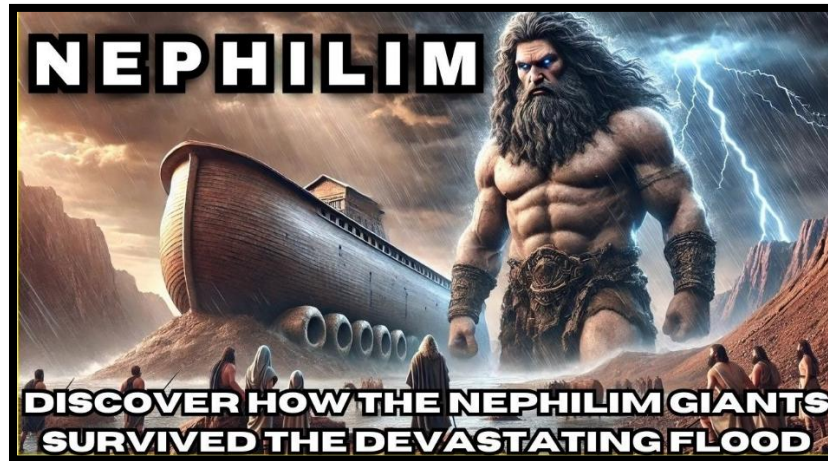
May the Holy Spirit descend upon you and fill you with love and wisdom, as you journey through space and time, to discover the wonders of creation as the Father reveals His Divine Plan for mankind. May the Magnificat of the Blessed Mother's "yes" be your "yes" as you open your heart and mind to receive knowledge, truth, and understanding that only the Holy Spirit can give.

"When the Paraclete comes, the Spirit of truth who comes from the Father – and whom I Myself will send from the Father – He will bear witness on My behalf. He will guide you to all truth." (John 15, 26-27; 16:13)

The Spirit of Truth Prayer

Holy Spirit baptize me with the fire of your love. I have surrendered to you the best of my ability, and now I want to activate Your Spirit of Love within me. I need Your power in my life. Please fill me now. I believe that as I yield and ask, You will release Your strength, wisdom, healing, and love to meet the needs of the hour. Work in me in a powerful way. I want every purpose God has for my life to be fulfilled, and I need you, mighty Spirit of God, to bring that purpose to fulfillment. Release Your Spirit within me, Amen.

Table of Contents:



The Alpha and Omega of Creation Series	3
A Raging Storm	5
Become an Apostle of Truth	6
In Honor of the Holy Spirit.....	7
Table of Contents:.....	9
Introduction: The Nephilim Giants	13
Key Biblical Passages	13
Genesis 6:1,2.....	13
Genesis 6:3.....	13
Genesis 6:4.....	13
Genesis 6:4- As well as later	13
Genesis 6:5.....	13
The Journey Begins:.....	15
The work of nature spirits	15
The primordial matter of creation.....	16
The seven primeval spirits of God. The salvation.....	18
Jehovah's wars.	20
The disharmony of the seven spirits in man.	21
Miracle after miracle.	23
The Jewish girl's thirst for knowledge with regard to the Lord.	24
The Roman's question regarding the Messiah.	26

Raphael clothes the poor.....	27
The Jewish girl's conjecture about the person of the Lord.....	30
The Jewess' excuse.....	31
The Lord's reference to messianic prophecies.....	33
Explanation of the first three commandments.....	34
The Soul's Process of Pre-Development	37
Incarnation of the Soul.....	38
What is the World/Earth?.....	39
Primitive Earth: The Nature of Matter and its Primordial Spirits.....	40
The Prehistory of the Creatures of the Earth.	42
Prehistoric People-1	43
Prehistoric People-2	44
Development of Earth and Human Being	45
Who was Embodied in Adam?.....	47
God Breathed a Living Soul into Adam	49
Creation of Eve- Genesis 3:21-24.....	50
Creation of Eve	51
The Creation of Eve – Adam’s rib!	51
Deliverance from Selflove to Rebirth	53
Was Adam the only Human Being Created by God?.....	54
The Fall.....	56
The Earth was Cursed Because of Adam’s Sin.....	57
Devils Plan to Destroy Humanity.....	58
Who was the “ancestor-pre-human-female” that Conceived Cain?	60
Knowledge of Adam.....	61
Adam and Cain, Experiments with Genetic Manipulation	63
Prehistoric Animals that were not Created by God	64
Monsters were Destroyed- Destruction of the Moon- asteroids.....	66
Man Begins Again – advanced civilization.....	67
Cain’s Journey to the Sea	67
The Development of Cain’s Line	69
The World Became Highly Civilized Before the Flood.....	69

Adam's Descendants	72
Adam's Descendants – chart.....	73
Lamech's Family – city of Enoch of Cain	74
Begin and Cause of the Decline of the Children of the Heights	77
Needs and their evil.	80
Origin of the Nephilim – warning of the Flood	82
The pre-Noah Earth- before the flood	84
The Flood- Last days-	89
The Great Flood	91
The Great Flood- Comments	91
Revelation of the Flood	93
The Reason for the Flood.....	93
Noah and the Ark.....	94
Building the Ark	96
The Ark of Noah.....	96
Did the Nephilim reappear after the flood?.....	97
The Mysteries of the Great Egyptian Dynasty	99
The People of Abyssinia and Nubia	100
The Lord Sends a Messenger to meet the Nubian Caravan.....	103
The Lord Speaks with the Leader of the Nubians.	105
The Leader Describes His Journey to Memphis.	107
The Curse of the Over-developed Culture of the Egyptians	109
The Blessing which comes from the Primitive Culture of Simple Men ...	111
The Nubian Camp in Egypt.....	112
The Nubian Requests Confirmation of the Presence of the Lord.....	114
The Nubians Recognize the Lord.	117
Oubratouvishar describes his Nubian homeland.	118
Oubratouvishar Treasure.....	120
The Black People who followed on.	121
The Nature of Isis and Osiris.....	122
The Great Rock Temple of Abu Simbel.....	124
The Origin of the Abu Simbel Temple – first and second pearl	127

The Secret of the Third Pearl - The Seven Giants and the Sarcophagus ..	129
And now let us look at our exposed Fourth Pearl!.....	131
Raphael explains the Constellations on the Fourth Pearl.	133
The Divisions of Time on the Fifth Pearl	134
The Sixth Pearl - depictions of the pyramids, the obelisks, and the Sphinx	136
The Constellations on the Seventh Pearl - the collapse of Egyptian culture. The story of the seventh pearl.	138
Moors as examples of true Primordial Humanity	141
The Power of the Moors to Control the element Water.....	142
The Dominance of the Moors over Animals.....	144
The Control Exercised by the Moors over Plant Life and the Elements. .	146
The Miraculous Power of Resurrection- rebirth of the soul	148
The Composition of the Human Brain and Pyramids	149
About the growth of the Outer Life Sphere of Man	151
The Shining outer Life Sphere of Moses and the Patriarchs.....	153
The Purpose of the Lord's Profound Precepts	154
Of the Ascension of Jesus.....	155
Suggestions for the Mission.....	157
"I Am with you always	159

Introduction: The Nephilim Giants



Key Biblical Passages

Genesis 6:1,2

When men began to multiply on earth and daughters were born to them, the sons of heaven saw how beautiful the daughters of man were, and so they took for their wives as many of them as they choose,

Genesis 6:3

Then the Lord said: "My spirit shall not remain in man forever, since he is but flesh. His days shall comprise one hundred and twenty years."

Genesis 6:4

At That time the Nephilim appeared on earth (as well as later), after the sons of heaven had intercourse with the daughters of man, who bore them sons. They were the heroes of old, the men of renown,

Genesis 6:4 - As well as later

According to Nm 13, 33, when the Israelites invaded Palestine and found there the tall aboriginal Anakin, they likened them to the Nephilim: cf Dt 2, 10f. Perhaps the huge megalithic structures in Palestine were thought to have been built by a race of giants, whose superhuman strength was attributed to semi-divine origin. The heroes of old: the legendary worthies of ancient mythology.

Genesis 6:5

When the Lord saw how great was man's wickedness on earth, and how no desire that his heart conceived was ever anything but evil, he regretted that he had made man on the earth, and his heart was grieved.

NOTE: To understand these Bible verses correctly, the Lord will explain them to you from the beginning so that the truth can be revealed and understood properly. The correlation of these events will give you conviction of the truth. Let's begin:

The Journey Begins:

The work of nature spirits

Ref: The Gospel of John by Jakob Lober Vol. 7: Ch16

The secret of the miracle.

(Raphael:) "See, you certainly cannot see the elements of pure gold drifting around in the air; but I can see it and can very precisely distinguish it from countless other elements. Since I can do this and can also expand my will similarly in all directions, I can extract the pure gold elements out of the air and concentrate it in a visible heap, or I can just as well give it any hardened form I choose, like for example a goblet, and you will immediately see a heap of gold of any size or a golden goblet in front of you, and it will consist of completely natural gold and not a, so to speak, trifling fool's gold, but the same natural gold which people dig out of the mountains, separate it from foreign elements, melt it in the fire and produce all sorts of valuable objects and items.

Since certain nature-spirits inside the matter of the mountains, who are closely related to the gold elements in the air, attract according to their very basic intelligence and attached willpower - called by chemists the forces of attraction - the free gold out of the air, and if this continues for a couple of hundred years, quite an amount of gold will become visible at such a place.

That, however, such concentration of gold in nature progresses only very slowly, is due to the very basic intelligence and similar basic willpower of such nature-spirits in their inevitable state of judgement.

However, I, as a most free and perfected spirit with the highest intelligencers beyond number and measure and equally fullness of willpower out of God, can accomplish in one moment - as I have showed you already - , what the unilaterally weak intelligent and equally willpower limited nature-spirits can only accomplish over time.

Pay attention how I'm going to perform such miracle. For your sake I will do it somewhat slower, so that you more easily can see how the gold out of the free air will collect in your hand. See, I want it to happen, and you can already see in your hand a thin concentration of gold! Just look at how the gold becomes more and more! The palm of your hand is already covered with a quite heavy gold plate. Above it a well-shaped edge starts to appear. It grows upwards, and see, within a few moments you have a holder from pure gold - say - completely natural gold on your hand, which can only be dissolved in its primeval elements by the power of a perfected spirit, but not so easily by any other force in nature. But I will leave you this holder as it is, and you can use it or let a goldsmith make something else from it or just keep it.

You have now seen how I, in a slow manner have performed a miracle in front of you; but now stretch out your other hand and I shall perform the same miracle instantly! See, I want, and instantly you are holding exactly the same holder in your left hand!

Just as I can accomplish this through my inner power, I can do all the other things what I have produced for the many guests. Nevertheless, you do not need to give this meal to your guests for free; since they are all wealthy traders they should pay for the food and drinks, they had. Soon they will go back to their meanwhile

locked sale booths and attract buyers through their shouting. Just let your servants collect the money!"

Hereupon Lazarus called his servants and said that they should not ask more than ten pennies from each guest. The servants did that and each guest paid with pleasure the required pennies and on top were thankful for the good catering and asked for the liberty to come back in the evening and on the two following days, which Lazarus of course most graciously permitted.

After all the many guests had left the mountain to return to the city, the servants wanted, according to habitual custom, to clear the tables. But Raphael indicated to them that they should spare themselves the work; since the same guests would return in the evening, nobody is required to look after them, except for the servants to collect the money after the evening meal and to leave all tables laid as before. This was accepted and many guests were served with food and drinks for the following two days, without Lazarus being required to use a single fish, a piece of bread or a cup of wine from his existing stock.

The primordial matter of creation.

Ref: The Gospel of John by Jakob Lober Vol. 7: Ch17

After all the guests had gone, our friend Lazarus asked Raphael, saying: "Listen, God's spirit full of charity, you said earlier that the air contains countless numbers of all sorts of primeval elements and substances as free-floating and unbound, which can be recognized by the wisdom and by the will of a perfected spirit and be bound together to a more solid body! Through the examples given to me, the issue became inevitable very clear to me; but alongside a completely different very important question came to me and consists of the following: See, the primeval elements and substances may in fact be present in the air of this earth, the way you have very clearly explained it me; but where do they come from originally? How do they get in such countless variety into the air of our earth, probably even in much bigger variety into the air of countless other earths and worlds, which I mercifully learned about from the many other disciples and from the Lord Himself? Explain this also to me!"

Said Raphael: "Oh, oh, how can't you understand this by yourself! Can anything exist outside God, which has not been created by Him? Isn't everything from eternity that fills infinitive space, *His thoughts, His ideas, His wisdom, His will?*

See, His thoughts in never ending most infinitive abundance from eternity to the next are the actual primeval substances and the primeval elements, from which everything on earth and in heaven is made, and exists through the undivided eternal power of the godly will. No thought and no idea can arise and continue to exist even in God, without His will. Thereby, however, that each thought and each idea originates out of the highest intelligence through His will, it carries in itself as separate intelligence also the corresponding part of God's will, and such single thought of God or similar created larger idea of the Lord which carries God's will, can therefore never end just as God Himself, because in the brightest light of His self-conscious sphere He never ever can forget a once produced thought and an even deeper composed idea. Since this is with God the purest impossibility, to forget a once produced thought and an even deeper composed idea, each minutest thought and ever so slightly seeming idea of God, is forever in its primeval spiritual

constitution indestructible.

Since further - as indicated earlier - every thought and every idea of God also partially as a divine intelligence particle, must necessarily also carry in itself the divine will, because without it, it could never have been thought, every such single thought and every such single idea of God, either on its own or bound together by several thoughts in a wise manner - regarded then as an idea - can as a separate entity in its own kind and sphere develop itself, perfect itself in and by itself to that what it is, multiply itself to infinity and can become more noble and more perfect by wise conjunction with other primeval elements and substances.

In the very beginning an originating sun is a pure, shimmering ether of light, or a self- seizing of countless many of God's thoughts and ideas, because of their own underlying corresponding portion of God's will. Based on this underlying will of God they attract from the infinite ether on an ongoing basis what is similar to them, and in such a way the previous shimmering ether gets denser and in time reaches the density of this our atmosphere. This becomes over time more and more dense and water will appear; but also, the water is getting denser over time and mud, loam, rocks and thereby a more solid earth will develop over time.

These now closer and more firmly tied together original spiritual, primeval substances and primeval elements start, in such an unfree condition, to feel more and more uncomfortable, become very active to free themselves, and in such world body it starts to get fierier in especially the heavier parts. Through this fiery zeal of the pressed, originally free primeval substances and primeval elements, the more solid parts of such a new world body are torn, yes in many cases the inner becomes the outer and vice versa the outer the inner, and after many such battles, such a new world body will be placed in a more stable order, and the caught primeval thoughts and primeval ideas of God find another way to free themselves from the immense pressure.

And see, soon all sorts of plants and animals originate, and this goes on up to humans, where only then a great many of such primeval thoughts and primeval ideas of God find full redemption from their old judgment. Only then they recognize God as the primeval reason of all being and all life and return then as independent, most free beings - this means, if they have lived according to His recognized will - back to Him.

But in this pure, free and independent spiritual return on countless many and highly heterogeneous world bodies, lies the same big difference as in and between the world bodies themselves. The most perfect return from a world body to God is and remains only possible from this earth, *because here every person in his soul and in his spirit could develop to completely resemble God, if he just wanted to; since he who strives for God here, shall come to God. - Do you comprehend such things?"*

Said Lazarus: "I understand this well, since in this regard I have received from the Lord the most important foreknowledge; but some of it remains incomprehensible to me and I have to ask more questions."

Said Raphael: "O, my dear friend, this is also with me the case! Since in God endless many things are hidden, which we, after God the highest and purest spirits, do not know; since God has for the good and pure spirits for eternity such a vast stock, that He can forever with never anticipated new creations out of His love and

wisdom, inexpressible surprise and thereby continuously multiply and increase their bliss.

Said Lazarus: "O yes, this I believe very much; but about things which my very limited human mind is able to ask, you surely can give me an explanation!

See, at some stage I read a book with the title "**Wars of Jehovah**", and therein, of course in a very mythical language, mention was made of the fall of the primeval angels!

In the beginning God - of course endlessly long before any worlds were created - had created seven large spirits corresponding to the seven spirits in God. He gave them great powers and similar great wisdom, so that also they were able, just like God, to create smaller spirits, completely resembling themselves, in very great numbers, and so infinitive space was filled with countless legions of spirits.

The greatest and mightiest of those seven primeval spirits was according to the text obviously Lucifer. But he lifted himself above his power and size, didn't want to become only God's equal, but wanted to rule over God. God became angry, seized the traitor and pushed him for eternity into judgment. *But the six great spirits stayed, along with their countless many lesser spirits, with God and served Him only from eternity to eternity, while at the same time the lesser spirits of Lucifer as evil devils and as forever rejected beings by God, had to burn in God's fire of rage to endure continuously the greatest pain without relief.* - Now, what do you say to that, as a surely one of the first angels of God?"

The seven primeval spirits of God. The salvation.

Ref: The Gospel of John by Jakob Lober Vol. 7: Ch18

Said Raphael: "This is only a corresponding picture of precisely that which I just have told you about the creation or successive formation of a complete heavenly body.

The primeval great spirits are the very thoughts in God and the ideas arising from them.

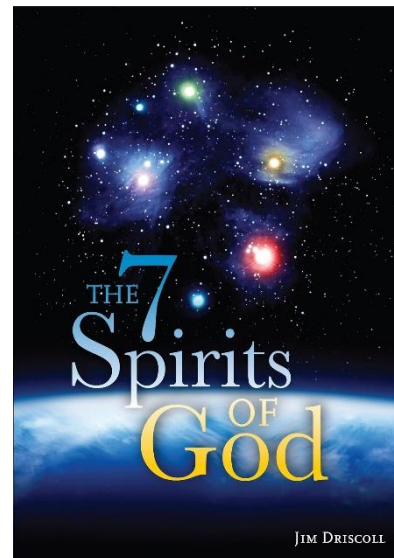
The mystical number seven means the perfect original divine and God-resemblance in every thought originating from Him and in every idea which He placed outside Himself.

The **first** in God is love. It can be found in all created things; since without it nothing is possible.

The **second** is wisdom as the light emanating from love. This you can see in the form of every being; since the more a being is receptive to light, the more developed, defined and beautiful will be its form.

The **third** that arises out of love and wisdom, is the effective will of God. Through it the beings thought of become reality, that they truly exist, - otherwise all thoughts and ideas of God would be, what your hollow thoughts and ideas are, which never are put into action.

The **fourth** that again originates from the three and is called order. Without order no being could have any permanent and stable form and therefore could also



never reach a certain destiny. If you place an ox in front of a plough and he would change his form and shape, for example, into a fish or a bird, would you ever reach a goal with him? Or you wanted to eat a fruit and in front of your mouth it would turn into a rock, - what use would it be for you? Or you go somewhere on firm ground and the road under your feet would turn to water, - would even the most solid road be of any use to you? See, all that and countless other things are prevented by the divine order as the fourth spirit of God!

The **fifth** spirit of God is called the divine earnestness, without it no existing thing would be possible, since it is equal to the eternal truth in God and provide all beings with continuance, reproduction, prospering and ultimate perfection. Without such a spirit in God things would be very bad with all beings. They would all be like mirages, which appear to be something, as long as you can see them; but only too soon the conditions of production change, because earnestness is lacking, and the beautiful and wondrous images melt away into nothingness! They are well-ordered to look at, but since there prevails no earnestness in the producing reason, they are nothing more than highly transient images, for whom it is impossible to have any permanent existence.

See, there we have already the five great primeval spirits of God, and therefore let's move on to the last two, and therefore listen to me further!

The **sixth** spirit of God is called patience. Where the highest love, the highest wisdom, the almighty will, the most perfect order and the unchangeable firm earnestness are present, it is apparent that the highest and forever unachievable patience must also be present; since without it everything would become a rush and ultimately change into an inextricable chaos of the old wise men.

If a master builder builds a house, he cannot, alongside his other required characteristics, ignore patience; since if he lacks this - believe me - he will never manage his house.

I say to you: If it wasn't for this spirit in God, already for an endless long time, no sun in infinitive space would have provided light for any earth, and the world of spirits would be a strange place completely without beings?! **Patience is the mother of the eternal, unchanging mercy of God, and if this sixth spirit would not be in God, where and what would all the creatures be in relation to the almighty God?!**

If in some way we transgress and therefore become apparently subject to the destructive curse of the divine love, wisdom, divine will, who's seriousness follows the preceding order, we bump into divine patience, which in time will and must bring everything into equilibrium, since without it all creatures irrespective how perfect, would be subject to the eternal judgment of destruction.

The divine patience would together with the preceding five spirits in God be able to create one or even countless many people on the world bodies and would also be able to maintain them; but then one or even countless many people would live forever in the heavy flesh, and the soul ultimately becoming free from the bonds of matter would forever be unthinkable. At the same time animals, plants and people would continuously reproduce and finally live in such large numbers in a space-limited world body so close and crowded together that one could not get out of the way of the other. But this is only possible, if a world body under the rule of infinitive divine patience would sufficiently mature, to carry and feed plants,

animals and people. Yes, the creation of a material world, given the already known six spirits, would be infinitively slow, and it would be very doubtful if ever a material world came into being.

But patience is, as already said, the mother of divine mercy, and as such is the **seventh spirit** in God actually mercy, which we also can call gentleness. This makes everything right. It puts in order all the preceding spirits and causes the timely maturity of a world as well as all the creatures on it. For everything a certain time period is set, and the mature spirits can therefore soon and easily reach full redemption and enter into their eternal freedom and fullest independent life.

This **seventh** spirit in God caused also that God Himself came into the flesh, to redeem within the shortest possible time all the imprisoned spirits from the hard bondages of a necessary judgment of matter, therefore also this His undertaking - the redemption - the new recreation of all heavens and all worlds and can be called the biggest undertaking of God, since herein all seven spirits of God in complete equilibrium collaborated, what has been previously no so much the case and according to the spirit of order in God was also not allowed to happen. Since previously this seventh spirit in God as explained to you just know, was only insofar with the other spirits active, so that all thoughts and ideas of God could become reality; but from now on he will act more mightier and the result of that is precisely the most perfect redemption.

And see, these are the seven spirits which you did not understand, and everything that has been created out of the seven spirits of God, corresponds in everything and all with these seven spirits of God and carries them in itself. And the eternal continuous creation and the equal continuous creating, is, what the primeval wise men of this earth called 'The Wars of Jehovah'."

Jehovah's wars.

Ref: The Gospel of John by Jakob Lober Vol. 7: Ch19

(Raphael:) "Just as the seven spirits or special properties in God continuously battle with each other, so that one always challenges the other to become active, in the same way you can very easily recognize the same battle to a more or lesser degree in all creatures of God.

Love on its own is blind, and its aspiration is to attract everything towards itself. But in this aspiration, it ignites, and it becomes light and as such cognition and recognition is added to love.

Can't you see now, how the light fights against the single aspiration of pure love and brings order and consideration to love?!

But at the same time, from this battle or war awakens the will as the active arm of love and its light, who turns what the light has wisely put in order into action.

But then out of cognition of love through its light and by the power of both, at the same time the very order is generated, and fights against everything disorderly by the light and by the will of love, and you again find an eternal steady war of Jehovah in Him as well as in all creatures.

Everything would be in good order if one could find some guarantee that this, what the four spirits so beautifully and orderly placed into action, had some permanence. But all the still so marvelous works of the first four spirits resemble the play of children, who with great enthusiasm and joy masterly put some things

orderly into action, but shortly afterwards don't like the product anymore and destroy it with greater zeal than they had when creating. And verily, friend, with the permanence of all the creation, things would look very bad.

But to prevent this, resulting from the great pleasure for the perfect success of works, arises earnestness from the four spirits as a fifth spirit in God as well as in His creatures, and this spirit continuously fights against destruction and termination of the once created works, similar to a person who became sensible and serious, who for example has built himself a house and planted a vineyard and does everything to maintain and use the house and the vineyard, but not trying to destroy the house and the vineyard soon, as I have shown you earlier with the products of the children. And see, this is - as already said another war of Jehovah!

But in time the house built will show some deficiencies, and the vineyard will still not produce the desired harvest, and the builder regrets his hard labor and his earnestness during his zealous activity, and he wants to destroy the work and erect a new one in its place; but then the sixth spirit rises against such earnestness and is called - as already indicated - patience. And see, it maintains the house and the vineyard! And this is again a new war of Jehovah!

Now, patience on its own, united with the preceding spirits, would not carry out any special improvements at the house and at the vineyard, but would nicely leave everything in place; but then comes the seventh spirit, namely mercy, containing in itself gentleness, concern, diligence, charity and generosity. And see, man starts to improve his house in a good way, so that deficiencies of any importance are no longer present, and digs and fertilizes the vineyard, so that it soon produces a rich harvest! And see again, this is once more a battle or a war of Jehovah in man as well as in God and in angels!

And so is the true, perfect life in God, in angels and in man a continuous battle of the seven spirits I have showed you. But this battle is in God and in angels not something, as if it was a case that one or the other of the seven spirits wanted to suppress the other spirits and make them inactive, but the battle is always of such a nature, that one spirit continuously and with all its strength and power supports the other, and therefore every spirit completely present is in the other. Love is present in all the other six and in the same manner the light or wisdom in love as well as within the other five spirits and so forth, so that in each individual spirit all the others are also completely and fully active and continuously support each other in the most beautiful harmony."

The disharmony of the seven spirits in man.

Ref: The Gospel of John by Jakob Lober Vol. 7: Ch20

(Raphael:) "This should also be the case in a person; but unfortunately, it is not so. The ability is given to each person, however without being completely developed and exercised. Only a few people exist who bring all the seven spirits in them to a full and equal activity and thereby become truly equal to God and us angels; but, as said, many are turned away from it and worry very little about it and thereby do not at all recognize the true secret of life inside them. Such blind and half dead people cannot recognize the very reason for life in them, since they are only guided and ruled by one or the other of the seven spirits.

And so, the one lives purely out of the spirit of love and does not pay

attention to any of other spirits. What else is such a person other than a voracious predator who never gets enough? Such are full of self-love, full of jealousy and full of miserliness and are stonehearted towards all his neighbors.

Again, others have an enlightened love and are as such also quite wise and can give their neighbors quite good teachings; but their will is weak and therefore they are not able to put anything to work.

Again, there are others with whom the spirits of love, light and will are very active; but it looks very weak with the spirits of order and proper earnestness. Those type of people will be able to talk very clever and sometimes even quite wise and are able to put here and there a very few things to work; but the true and completely out of all seven spirits wise person will very soon from their words, speeches and works notice, that there is no order and no coherence.

And again, there are people who have love, light, will and order; but they lack the spirit of earnestness. Therefore, they are afraid and fearsome and are not able to provide their work with activeness.

Again, others are full of earnestness and courage; but patience is lacking. Such people normally rush too much and often ruin with their impatient zeal more than make good. Yes, friend, without the right amount of patience there is nothing; since who doesn't have the right amount of patience, speaks a certain death sentence over himself! Since man must wait until the grapes are fully ripe, if he wants to have a good harvest. If he is opposed to that, he must ascribe it to himself, when instead of in the end harvesting a noble wine, he only produced an undrinkable sour wine.

Patience is therefore in each and everything a necessary spirit: first to control and to restrain the spirit, which I called earnestness, who often wants to go to infinity – since this spirit in conjunction with love, wisdom and will degenerates into the most severe form of arrogance, who as is generally known does not find any limits in man, - and secondly, because patience, as I already have shown you, is the mother of the spirit of mercy, which is the spirit who provides by its backward action to all preceding spirits the divine-spiritual perfection and makes it possible for the soul in man to reach the true rebirth in the spirit.

Therefore, has the Lord Himself laid it onto the hearts of all of you to love God and your neighbor, by saying: "Be merciful, as your Father in heaven is merciful, and be meek and humble, just as I am with my whole heart meek and humble!"

The Lord instructed you all to develop especially the seventh spirit, since in this last spirit all preceding spirits are contained and trained. Who, therefore, with all zeal develops and strengthens this last spirit, develops and strengthens also the preceding spirits and thereby reaches soonest and most certainly perfection. Who starts his development with one or more of the preceding spirits, reaches only with great difficulty or often not at all the complete and full perfection of life, since these preceding spirits on their own does not contain the seventh spirit in them, while the seventh spirit on its own necessarily contains all preceding spirits in him.

And see now, this is also the continuous fall of the angels or the thoughts and ideas out of God - what we also can refer to as the outgoing powers of God, for as long as they haven't in their entirety in the being of man, brought this seventh spirit to a true and highest perfection. Since all the preceding spirits have been given to nearly all the creatures partially more or less free; but the seventh spirit must first

be attained by man's very own diligence and zeal.

And just as by such attainment all the preceding six spirits reach their true meaning and true purpose of life, in the same manner, through it, the whole person reaches the fullest freedom of life and independence. - And now I ask you again if you have comprehended all that?"

Said Lazarus: "Yes, you servant filled with the spirit of the Lord, verily, forever I cannot thank you enough for your great patience and mercy! Only now do I understand the wisdom of the old books! Only it is forever a pity that I alone understand this, since I'm too poor a writer to record such teachings in a book. You must also tell all this to the other disciples of the Lord, so that they, since some of them know how to write quite well, can record this for all times and all nations; but they will not know anything about it."

Said Raphael: "Don't you worry about that; since during the same hour when I have explained to you the miracles, the wars of Jehovah and the seven spirits of God, the Lord inside the hall has explained everything exactly in the same understandable manner, as I have explained it to you, and John and Matthew have recorded the main points! But if you have an empty book, then I will record everything for you word for word in one moment."

Said Lazarus: "I have such a book; should I bring it here?"

Said Raphael: "No need! Let's go into the house and you will find your book fully written!"

Thereupon Lazarus had great joy and both of them came to us in the large dining hall.

Miracle after miracle.

Ref: The Gospel of John by Jakob Lober Vol. 7: Ch21

When Lazarus along with Raphael came to us, he still could hear the general great surprise about My teaching - regarding miracles, regarding the wars of Jehovah, regarding the seven primeval spirits in God and about the so called fall of the angels, and the Roman Agricola felt sorry for Lazarus, since he wasn't present during such a so holy and most important message out of My mouth.

Said Lazarus to him: "I thank you for this your special attention! But what the Lord by His exceptional great mercy has most kindly explained in the house, precisely the same did this exceptional wise and by the will of the Lord also exceptional mighty youth explain and show me outside.

As proof here are the two mugs out of pure gold, one grew slowly from the bottom to the upper edge to illustrate more visually the action of a perfected spirit, while the second was created within one moment in my hand! The reason for that was the miraculous sudden production of the many benches, tables, tents, table dishes, table covers and the various foodstuff and drinks. Between eight and nine hundred people from all corners of the world were superbly served in their own manner and way of life, nevertheless, from my stocks the foreigners received not as much as one could hide under a fingernail! Since all this happened before my eyes, it was understandable that I would enquire how it was possible for him to do all this. And he explained everything so clearly and purely that I quite well understood everything he enlightened me about.

Then we started talking about the book regarding the wars of Jehovah, the

seven spirits of God and the fall of the prince angel Lucifer. And see, this apparent youth revealed everything to me and finally made sure that his over an hour-long speech about these highly important issues were written into a book, which I will show to you right now as a second proof that everything you heard I heard also, and you can read for yourself and compare it with what you have heard!"

Said Agricola: "You have certainly acted very well to do this, and it was quite clever and wise of you, that you have convinced the wondrous youth accordingly; since this message was too highly important, not to be recorded verbatim. Also here, two disciples of the Lord recorded it, but only the main points of this great speech. Therefore, go and bring us the book, so that we all can see and compare it!"

Here Lazarus turned to Me and said: "O Lord, tell me if the time has come, to show this book to the Romans!"

I said: "O certainly, just go and bring it here! Nobody will be harmed by hearing such important message for a second time."

Lazarus went to his room and brought, himself full of surprise and great joy, the book, placed it in front of the Romans on the table and said: "See, friend, here is the miraculously written book! Read it out loud from the beginning to the end, so that all people present here can once again hear the important matter that Raphael and the Lord have revealed to us!"

Said Agricola: "I shall do this immediately if the handwriting is clearly readable!"

The Roman opened the book, found the handwriting in the Greek language extremely clearly readable and read the written word from the beginning to the end to all those present, which lasted again nearly an hour, and most of the people present who commanded the Greek tongue, couldn't stop being surprised in how My earlier message was contained therein word for word.

The Jewish girl's thirst for knowledge about the Lord.

Ref: The Gospel of John by Jakob Lober Vol. 7: Ch22

Only at this point did the beautiful Jewish girl ask Agricola more seriously, who I and the wondrous youth in reality actually were, and why everybody addressed Me always with "Lord and Master". She could see that I was a deeply wise person; but she still did not know where I came from and who I was.

Agricola replied and said: "My beautiful daughter! Be very attentive to everything, including your parents and your brother, and you will find out who this marvelous man is, where He as well this youth came from!"

Said the Jewish girl: "Do you know yourself with all certainty who this marvelous man actually is? And if you know that, - why don't you tell me?"

Said Agricola: "O my dearest daughter, your wise king Salomon said once: 'Everything in this world has its time, and between time and time man should have patience; as long as the grapes are not ripe one should not take them from the vine!' And see, in the same way you are not be fully ready yet, to know the details about this marvelous Man; but if you become ready, more detailed information will be revealed to you. As I already have said, pay close attention to what this marvelous Man will say and do, and your heart will tell you, who this marvelous Man is! - Do you understand this?"

Said the Jewish girl: "Yes, yes, I completely understand what you have said!"

The poor person is constantly held out to be patient to become better; the rich and respected person - all the world can always find some means to obtain information, if his patience is wearing thin. Yes, yes, I have known this for quite a long time! Now, now, I will completely follow your good advice, high Lord; but if I will gain anything from it, is an entirely different question!"

Here the father of the daughter asked Agrikola for forgiveness and said: "Lord, Lord, forgive the poor child; despite all her kind-heartedness she is sometimes too eager to learn and if you from time to time for good reasons withhold something from her, she becomes slightly indignant. But if the often-futile curiosity storm passes, she soon is full of patience and gentleness again and completely submits gladly to every bitterness. Therefore, good and high Lord, overlook this small misdemeanor of our child!"

Said Agricola: "Ah, what do you think of me?! The speech of your lovely daughter pleases me a great deal, since she quite openly and without holding back spoke the truth. From now on I will be even more your friend than before. Therefore, in this regard you can be quite reassured. But your daughter should continue to talk in her own manner, and thereby we shall get to the whole truth." With that the poor parents were completely content, and the daughter was now allowed to speak her mind freely.

She (the Jewish girl) immediately turned to the Roman and said to him: "O dear, great Lord and friend, you are a very good person, and all your colleagues seem to be the same; but in your great worldly fortune you will never be able to really feel what poverty in all its often very helpless and great suffering means! If a young and by the nature of God not deprived girl does not do what the great and wealthy want, then you are already as good as completely lost. No person will then even look at us, you are insulted and regarded as vain, stupid and proud being, and if you in your suffering turn to someone for help, you are shown the door and are not allowed to show up in front of any door again. This is and will always be to a high degree unpleasant for us and in the end deprives us of all trust even in the better part of mankind. We are all human and are tainted with all types of weaknesses and imperfections. Is this true or not?"

Said Agricola: "What you have said is fair and completely the truth; but there is something that you have forgotten when describing poverty and suffering! See, whom God loves, is very thoroughly tried by Him, before he is fully helped by Him! And it seems this is what the Lord God has done to you. But when your suffering reached the highest point, His help came to you, and now you have been truly helped. Since I have in the name of God, your and my Lord, promised and shall keep my word given to you, out of love and gratitude to your true God, but certainly not due to any special love and affection for you, as you are a very beautiful Jewish girl. My love for God is very much greater, than I ever have felt for all the beautiful and magnificent things of the world I have encountered. Your concerns need from now on cause you no more anxiety; but that your closer acquaintance with this marvelous Man is held back for a while, has a very wise reason, and we are not in any way hard against you, if we do not tell you straight away everything we are absolutely certain and with the most complete truth know about this Man.

That is something very extraordinary about Him, you can imagine yourself; however, what the extraordinary consists of, you shall soon easily and largely find

out by yourself anyway, if you only, as I have advised you, be very attentive about everything He is going to say and do. From the very beginning I have drawn your attention to the tableware on our table, how He created it by only using His will. Then you also were a witness, when He, during His explanation of His miracles, called those two golden mugs out of the air into being, which still stand in front of Him and are absolutely similar to those which the landlord Lazarus brought in, when he told us that the youth, sitting at the same small table over there with Lazarus eating and drinking, called them into being out of the air in the same manner as this marvelous man has done the same inside. If you heard and seen all such things, then you, as well as your parents and your brother, should be able to obtain more light about this marvelous Man, who is able to speak so tremendously wise and can perform such extraordinary deeds."

Said the Jewish girl: "Yes, yes, you have spoken fair and true; but therein lies for us four the actual problem, which we are not able to solve that easily; he speaks too clear and too wise and performs unheard of extraordinary deeds for even the greatest prophet. For you Romans this is very easy, since you regard and accept such an extraordinary person immediately as a God, to revere and praise him. The wisdom of this marvelous man exceeds of course all concepts of man so far and in a similar manner his deeds, and therefore he must have a lot of the pure divine spirit in him; but for that we Jews cannot accept him as a God! - What do you say now?"

The Roman's question regarding the Messiah.

Ref: The Gospel of John by Jakob Lober Vol. 7: Ch23

Said Agricola: "Yes, my dear daughter of Jerusalem, for now not much can be said against such a statement; but the hour will come when you think and talk completely differently about this marvelous Man.

As a Jew, have you never heard about a Messiah of Jews, who shall come to free His people from the gripping hands of tyranny of sin, which seriously threatens the whole world with everlasting destruction? Wouldn't it be possible that by coincidence this very marvelous Man is the promised Messiah of the Jews and at the same time of all people of the world? - What do you think of that?"

Said the Jewish girl: "O friend, such foretelling sounds very comforting, but all our prophecies are put in a such a manner that they firstly are not understood by the priests and so much less by us laymen! In the prophecies of the prophets everything is put so vaguely that no person as we are, can learn from it when such Messiah comes, what He will look like, what characteristics He will have and by which He can most quickly and easily be recognized.

Sometimes He is a child, sometimes a lamb, the lion of Judea, and again a high priest in eternity - as such according to the manner of Melchisedek, a descendant of David, a king of the Jews without end, and so He is promised under different other names and meanings, so that finally nobody knows as what and in which human form, manner and dignity He will come in this world to us Jews.

By the way, I surely would not have anything against it, if this marvelous man over there were to be the true Messiah; but I really do not understand why our priests do having the fullest knowledge about it - for the sake of the people who foremost will believe them, but it seems that they totally ignore this true

Messiah! Since he was with you at the Great City Gate, when you argued with the senior cleric regarding my brother, and see, he apparently did not know him at all! Why is that?"

Said Agricola: "The reason for that is that the temple clerics are too domineering and too acquisitive and do not care for anything else than their earthly good life in all things, as you have seen yourself. In order to achieve this, the temple clerics use all sorts of lies and fraudulent behavior and are, as I have been convinced, enemies of all truth and as such also of every reality. They use the name of Moses and the other prophets in their mouths but despise their teachings and laws; and in place of Moses and the prophets, they give to the people their selfish statues, by which they torture them, by encumbering them with all kinds of unnecessary sufferings and suppress them spiritually and physically.

But this our marvelous Man is love, truth and highest wisdom Himself and testifies about the great wickedness of the Pharisees, who pose themselves as priests and scribes to the people and as supposedly servants of God, - in whom they do not believe, and whom they do not know and also does not want to recognize, they force the people to pay tribute to themselves beyond all measure and to almost formally worship them, and as such they oppose Him and does not want to know or hear anything about Him, what otherwise is clear as daylight.

I have convinced myself, a few days ago soon after my arrival, how they tried to stone Him when He was teaching in the temple, since He preached to them the full truth. If you know that, then you will know the reason, why your temple clerics do not want to recognize this marvelous Man as the promised Messiah and Saviour of the world, - but is not relevant to the main issue; since if your temple clerics recognize this or not, He still remains that which He is according to the fullest truth. - Do you understand this, my lovely daughter, quite well?"

Said the Jewish girl: "O yes, I understand this quite well; you may be completely right! For them down there, Moses and Elias can come visibly down from the bright heavens and show to them their great atrocities and admonish them to true repentance and bring them here and point to this marvelous man as the promised Messiah, they still would not believe those two greatest prophets but would persecute and curse them! O, this is only a matter too well known to us! But let's end our conversation; since I sense that somebody else wants to also speak, and the marvelous man seems to have something on his mind, and we must pay great attention to it!"

Raphael clothes the poor.

Ref: The Gospel of John by Jakob Lober Vol. 7: Ch24

Here I gave Raphael a sign and instructed him to provide suitable clothes for the Jewish girl, her brother and her parents.

Thereupon Raphael went quickly to the table of the four and said to them: "What clothes do you have at home in your living unit?"

Said the Jewish girl: "O you dearest and most heavenly beautiful and mighty servant of this marvelous man over there! You know anyway how badly off we have been for a long time regarding our clothing, and this is truly not our fault. And therefore, I think that we can stay indebted to you regarding an answer to your otherwise well-intended question, and this the more so since I already have

indicated to you the position regarding our clothing. Go there and convince yourself!"

Said Raphael: "This is not the reason why I have asked you; since I'm very familiar with your wardrobe in your home; but I also know something else, which you would like to hide because of your somewhat untimely ego. Out of love for your parents and your brother you have given your good and even very precious clothes to a Greek pawnbroker for one-hundred pennies for one year and still have the receipt at home, and see, of this you haven't told me that much at all! If you had those clothes in your possession, - would you be content? For you parents and your brother we could find something around here!"

Here the young Jewish girl was somewhat embarrassed but said after a little while: "Yes, yes, you have spoken the full truth; but what use they are to me now? Those good clothes were anyway only a present from a wealthy family member, who unfortunately died and afterwards was not in the position to support us any further. The clothes he gave to me when he still was alive are the complete inheritance that fell to us; everything else was inherited by his three sons, but who are very hard people and do not even want to look at the poor.

I myself never wore these precious clothes on my body, since firstly they are not fitting for a poor girl and secondly, they were too large. But our great suffering showed me another way out. Since I did not want to sell them because of the sentimental value, I pawned them with the idea that perhaps after a year things would change so that I could buy them back. But with our growing suffering, despite having the receipt in my hands, it would have never been possible to buy them back, and therefore I have said nothing about it; in addition, I was forced not to mention it by the circumstances that with us pawning is not a prize-worthy virtue. And now, my most valued, youthful friend, you know everything; the only question that remains is, what should I do about it!" Said the angel with a friendly face: "What else than buy them back! But this would mean for you, my dearest sister in God the Lord, a lot of walking and inconvenience, and therefore I will do this on your behalf. Is this alright by you?"

Said the Jewish girl: "Yes, it would be very much alright by me; but firstly, I do not have the receipt with me, and secondly the Greek lives quite a distance from here and comes only every moon to Jerusalem, does his business and goes back to where he lives, I believe in Tyros or Sidon. It is possible that he is currently here in Jerusalem, what I can't know, since he only comes to Jerusalem during Easter to complete his main business."

Said Raphael: "This doesn't matter! But since it is alright by you, I will find your Greek, buy back your clothes and bring them here. How quickly do you want them here?"

Said the Jewish girl: "O loveliest friend, if you want to do this by completely natural means, it will take you several days to do this, until you have completed this deal with the Greek; but since you also can perform miracles, you could accomplish this in a much shorter time period!"

Said Raphael: "Now, count the moments which I will need to fetch your receipt! Now, have you already started to count the moments?"

Said the Jewish girl: "Why should I, you are still here?"

Said Raphael with a smile: "But I was already gone and have your receipt

here in my hands. Have a look and tell me if this is the correct one!"

All were to the highest degree amazed over such a never heard of speed and Agricola and also some of the other Romans said: "But friend, you were not for one moment absent! How is this possible? You probably took the receipt at the same time when you collected the family from their home, in order to make some proper use of it later on? Since it is unbelievable that you, in one unthinkable short moment could have gone away and come back again!?"

Said Raphael: "In this material world and with people many things are impossible, which are actually possible for God and His power. But you know now out of the mouth of this Jewish girl that the Greek who took her clothes as collateral for the one-hundred pennies he lends her, is now in Tyros, although his business servant is here to look after his business. But his business booth is easily a two hours walk outside the city in the direction of Bethlehem, and I shall bring her clothes here just as quickly as it took me to fetch the receipt, and you will not be able to say that I probably have brought the clothes earlier as well. Just count the moments which I will need to complete this task! Have you already started counting?"

Said Agricola: "Why should I have started counting, since you never left this place?"

Said Raphael: "Just look! There on the bench next to the door, packed neatly inside a cloth, are the fully paid for clothes of this poor Jewish girl; let her look at them and confirm to you if these are all of her well-known clothes!"

The Jewish girl got up, looked with the greatest amazement at the clothes and immediately recognized them as her completely own clothes.

Since her mother was dressed even worse than herself, she said to Raphael: "Listen, you my incredible wondrous young friend, I will not ask you how it was possible for you to bring these clothes here to me so suddenly, which are more than sufficient to dress a woman, but would not be enough for my mother and myself! Therefore, I give them to her, so that she can be dressed completely; but shall take her clothes which she is currently wearing and they will be sufficient to cover the nakedness of my body for so long, until I will get a better dress through the goodness of the mighty Roman. But let me go with my mother into a secluded room where we can change!

But before that, I would like to ask you truly inconceivable miracle-mighty youth, if these otherwise precious clothes are to be considered pure; since they were before kept in the hands of a heathen, who are impure before us Jews. I would rather leave my mother dressed as she is right now, if she could become impure for even only one day."

Said Raphael: "My child, what you intend to do with this dress is a good thing and well done! Do according to your heart, and it will bear good fruit for you! Regarding the purity of the dress, you do not have to be concerned; since what has been in my hands is completely pure. But Lazarus will show you and your mother a room, in which you can change."

They both thanked him, took the clothes, and Lazarus took them to a small room where they could change.

After the mother was very nicely dressed, the daughter took the already very shabby dress of the mother and dressed herself and had great joy about the joy of

the now well-dressed mother and did not pay any attention to her own very poor clothes.

When both came back into the dining hall, see, the daughter was just as nicely dressed as her mother, and she started to be very surprised that she was as nicely dressed as her mother. But her never-ending surprise increased even more when she found that her father and her brother at the table of the Romans were also festively dressed.

The Jewish girl's conjecture about the person of the Lord.

Ref: The Gospel of John by Jakob Lober Vol. 7: Ch25

Only then did a light dawn in the daughter about Me, so that she with her mother came to Me and said (the Jewish girl): "O Lord and Master, my heart tells me, that only You are doing such things, what no person, no prophet and without Your will also no angel can do, but what is only possible for a God alone and therefore You also must be a God! Therefore, to You alone all our worship and love through our entire life! All honor and all praise to You alone!"

I said: "Whoever believes and acts according to My word, will become blessed! But you believe now, since you have seen signs and say, that I must be a God; but if you hadn't seen any signs, you would not have believed and not said that I'm a God. Now, why is that?"

See, the reason for that is that up to now there is no truth in you and cannot be, because up to now you haven't heard any truth at all! But I say to you now: work hard to obtain the pure truth; since it alone can make you perfectly free, in body and soul, - in the body, since the truth will tell you, why you were given a body to carry and in the soul, since the soul, out of the truth in it, will tell you, that it is there for the fullest freedom and everlasting independence!

Now, My poor and lovely daughter, I truly would not have told you this, if I would not have known that in every aspect you are an especially well-raised child. But I say to you, that I prefer people who are in their better recognition sometimes a little more stubborn, to those, who often after a few signs and proofs quickly turn like a reed in a storm and keep pointing into the direction of the storm, apparently proving that they do not carry a lot of inner strength. But if someone does not have enough inner strength and cannot in his mind form a good judgment, he is just as little suitable for the kingdom of God as someone who ploughs a field and continuously looks backwards.

And see, lovely girl, you are still in a similar position! Previously you have declared Me as a God, forced by the signs and My wisdom; but at the same moment rejected the God of Abraham, Isaac and Jacob. Then you thought by yourself: 'Who can speak so wisely and can perform such incomprehensible miracles, is in your view already a God!' But now you regret in the secrecy of your heart, that you have said something like it, since you immediately recalled the laws of Moses into your memory, and now you have a fear in yourself, since, during an emotional overreaction in your soul, you have forgotten the old Jehovah and has given to Me the worthy honors which only belongs to the true God. And see, this means to lay the hands onto the plough and look backwards!

If you perceive me as a God, then you must recognize Me completely as a God and do not think of any other God next to Me; since if you are declaring

Me a God, but at the same time also think of the old God and are afraid of Him for that, because you think you have sinned against the law of Moses, then your resolve towards Me is futile, and thereby you are not much better than a heathen, who also believe in the God of Moses, but at the same time also believe in Jupiter, Apollo, Mercury and many other Gods.

See, when you came to Me, you thought that I was one of the above named gods of the heathens and gave me for the sake of the high Romans over there, the honor! But at the same time, you thought about the God of Moses, who says: 'You should only believe in one God and should not have any foreign Gods next to Me!' You were overcome by remorse to have said that, and see, this was apparently not the right thing to do! Since if you believe in the God of Abraham, Isaac and Jacob, you cannot greet Me as a God. But if you believe seriously that I am a God, then you must let go the old God, since there can only be one God, and not two or more Gods, just as there is only one infinitive space and only one eternal time sequence, wherein everything is and happens.

Only if you could believe that the old God and I are one and the same - although it is written that nobody can see God and live at the same time -, then at least your conscience would be more at ease, and your fear of the old God would thereby apparently become less! - But tell Me now, what are you going to do!"

The Jewess' excuse.

Ref: The Gospel of John by Jakob Lober Vol. 7: Ch26

The young girl now thought for a while to what she should say in reply; since she felt completely exposed.

Her mother who was more composed tried to help her out of her embarrassment and said to her daughter: "O, why are you considering so fearfully and full of embarrassment about what to say? Did anyone ever see the old God of Abraham, Isaac and Jacob? Nobody knows anything else about Him, except what he has read about Him in the scriptures written by many people or what he has heard from the priests. But the priests who know the old God best, and are supposed to follow His commandments most thoroughly, do exactly the opposite and provide with their actions proof to every thinking person, that the old God of the Jews exists only in the imagination just as the gods of the heathens, who also have never been seen by any person of our time. But this God we see, hear His wise speeches and marvel at His extraordinary deeds which are only possible for an almighty God. What should prevent us any further from recognizing Him as the only true God and give to Him alone all honor?!"

Said the daughter: "Yes, yes, mother, everything would be quite alright, if we, with the greatest surety, could state that Moses and the prophets never existed and all writings by Moses were nothing else than fiction from the continuously same Pharisees. Since this cannot be completely verified and because as is generally known, there are many things in Moses and the prophets which are extraordinarily good and true, and which always posed, according to my knowledge, a problem for the Pharisees which they, as is generally known, always ignored, we cannot that easily assume that the complete holy scriptures has been compiled by the successive Pharisees with all kinds of fictional names, but was apparently written by people who were inspired by God, and therefore this is also the word of God,

despite those inspired people having never seen God! And therefore, it is always a truly very risky matter, to immediately recognize and worship a person as a God based on his speeches and surely highly miraculous deeds.

In my first surprise I have done the same and have in the great blindness of my heart never given it the slightest consideration, according to which I almost worshipped two gods. But the marvelous man immediately showed me the right way, by making me clearly understand, that he is not a God, but only a great, by God inspired prophet, - and anything else is superfluous.

Don't we know that the prophet Elias will come before the coming of the great Messiah?! And I'm not that easily mistaken - as you, mother, know -, and therefore I say that this exceedingly marvelous man is the returned prophet Elijah and this very lovely youth is his disciple, Elisha. But from now on we truly do not have to wait too long anymore for the great Messiah to arrive!

This is my view, and since this otherwise so marvelous, wise and miracle performing man thinks that I am a reed in my believe, I will show him the most stubborn opposite of his opinion. Just as not everything in the world that shines and looks like gold is gold, I will show here that not everything is weak, even if it looks weak.

There is only one God; but there can be many prophets, of which I count this marvelous man apparently as one of them. And as such I believe that I have given to you and this otherwise marvelous man upon his question to me, surely the best answer. His remark to me regarding the God Abraham, Isaac and Jacob was very good, and by it I felt very much admonished and for such admonition and all the other blessings I have to thank him to the highest degree; but if he is the promised Messiah, that has yet to be seen! O, I'm nothing else than a weak reed!"

Here the mother cautioned her daughter, that she should not be so vain and stubborn.

Said the daughter: "I'm not stubborn and to a much lesser degree vain; but I take note of the directive of this marvelous man and great master and thank him wholeheartedly for all the extraordinary blessings we have received from him. What can I and what can we all do more than that? But I will also not be stubborn in recognizing this marvelous master as the true Messiah and Saviour of the people; since every great and under circumstances also every small prophet is in a certain way a Messiah, because he brought the light of truth about life back to the people who had sunk into the night of life, and to lift them again out of the mud of sensuousness to a more pure spiritual and truthful life. And this man full of magnificence and full of true divine power and might, is doing the same as I have noticed, and is therefore certainly also a true Messiah of the people, who want to be taught by him.

With my opinion of him it is impossible to be completely wrong; since my opinion is only based on what I myself had heard and seen from him. The matter might be completely different - what we cannot know, but is impossible for us to be wrong, if we only accept what we can accept based on what we have heard and seen. May the spirit, the power and mercy of God lead him on and on for the blessing of all mankind!"

Said the mother: "My dear daughter, I would love you a lot more, if you were a little less dreadfully bright! For two years the old rabbi filled your head with all the

things that a person on this earth can possibly know, and after that you knew everything better than us, your parents, and thereby you became sometimes quite intolerable, and I notice it now, that you are getting close to becoming repulsive for even this great master! Therefore, I regard it now as advisable that we ask him for forgiveness and then return to our places!"

At this point I said: "O, there is no need for that; so far I haven't had the chance to speak with the daughter Helias, since only you as her mother conversed with her! Now let also Me converse with the beautiful Helias, so that she, as an intelligent maiden can, for herself and also for many others with whom she will get in contact, learn in the fullest truth with whom she is dealing with in Me as a Person; since until now she doesn't know anything and you as her mother even less! Therefore, Mother, speak only when I ask you to speak!"

Thereupon the mother kept quiet but begged Me to allow her to stay close to Me, which I allowed her to do.

The Lord's reference to messianic prophecies.

Ref: The Gospel of John by Jakob Lober Vol. 7: Ch27

Only then I turned to Helias and said to her: "Listen now, beautiful Helias! You said that I as a great prophet can be and actually am a Messiah just like any other great and small prophet; since according to your notable judgement every person is so to speak a Messiah and Saviour of the people, who can free them through the light of the full truth from the dark mud of lies and deception and lightless superstition. And since I am doing exactly that, I am a true Messiah of the people who listen to Me and live according to My teachings. This is a very sound opinion from you, a young Jewish girl who has been well educated by an old and honest rabbi. Only regarding your belief in God, you are - and you have the full right thereto - staying with the old God of Abraham, Isaac and Jacob.

But I must bring to your attention a few places in the writings of the prophets, where in fact I Myself am mentioned. From that you will more easily and clearly understand as it was the case up to now. See, it says amongst others in Isaiah:

'A virgin will conceive and bear a son, who will be called God with us.

A child is born to us, and a son is given to us, and the government will be on his shoulders, and His name will be called Wonderful, God, Hero, Father of Eternity, Prince of Peace.

On that day it will be said: 'See, He is our God in whom we trust, that He frees us! He is Jehovah, whom we expected. Let us rejoice and be glad in His salvation!'

The voice of a caller in the dessert: 'Prepare the way for Jehovah and make straight in the wilderness a highway for our God, and all flesh will see it.

See, Jehovah comes in power, and His arm will rule for Him! See, His reward is with Him! Like a shepherd He will put out to pasture His flock.

And Jehovah said: 'Rejoice and be glad, Daughter of Zion! See, I come, so that I can live in your midst; since then, many nations will follow Jehovah on His day.

I, Jehovah, have called you in righteousness and shall make you to be a covenant for the people; I, Jehovah - that is My name - shall not give My glory to anyone else.

See the coming days when I shall awaken a righteous branch of David, who

will rule as King and shall make court and justice on earth!'

See, you My Helias, this is how the prophets announced Me in old and even in present times! And the Baptist and Preacher John was actually the voice of the caller in the dessert, who straightened the way a little and said about Me: 'See, there comes the Lamb of God, who will take away the sins of this world!'

If you think, that Elias must come before the Messiah, to prepare all the flesh for the great arrival of the Messiah, who will be called Jehovah, then I say to you: Elijah was already there in John, and I Myself am also already here. I came into My property, and see, those who belong to Me do not recognize Me! - How do you like this viewpoint?"

Explanation of the first three commandments.

Ref: The Gospel of John by Jakob Lober Vol. 7: Ch28

Said Helias: "Lord and Master, I'm getting dizzy from what You just have told me! As You are with absolute certainty Him, of whom the prophets have prophesied, - what should we poor sinners do before You, o Lord?"

Said I: "Nothing but to listen to My teachings, to keep to them and to live by them, to love God above all and your neighbor as yourself, and with that you have awakened all seven divine spirits in yourselves and thereby have obtained the everlasting life, as I have explained it to you. - Are you content with that?"

Said Helias: "O Lord, o Jehovah, who would not be content with that and would not follow Your teachings and Your most loving commandments?! The only question which still arises if You, o Lord, are not abolishing the ten commandments and the prophets by those two commandments of love, since You said that these two commandments contain the complete law of Moses and all the prophets.

I said: "You My dear Helias, how can you ask such a question! If the law of Moses and all the prophets are contained within the two commandments of love, how could they ever be abolished? See, just as the seventh, thoroughly explained spirit of God in man, penetrates and fulfils all six preceding spirits and thereby containing them in itself, likewise does the true love for God and for the neighbor fulfil the preceding laws of Moses and all the guidelines and cautionary advice of the prophets!

If Moses says: 'You should believe only in one God and should not have any foreign and trifling gods of the heathens next to the true God!', you are fulfilling this first commandment of Moses more than perfectly, if you love God above all. Is it possible to really love God, if you do not beforehand undoubtedly believe in Him, that He truly exists?! But if you, through your love for Him, more than clearly and vividly demonstrate, that you believe in God, - will you out of your great love for Him be able to denigrate, to dishonor or to desecrate His name? Certainly, forever not! Since that which a person loves to the highest degree, he also honors it the most, and he even will rise against everybody with vigor and seriousness, who dares to dishonor his true love. Would you not be outraged to a high degree in your soul, if someone dishonors your father, whom you love very much? If you now love God above all, will you ever be able to desecrate His name in any way?

If you consider this properly, you must realize very clearly at first already sight, how the first as well as the second law of Moses is completely contained in the commandment of love to God. If you, my dear Helias, surely love God above all

and therefore also honor Him above all, - would you not like to withdraw quite often from the daily worldly activities, and engage with the object of your deepest love? Yes, undoubtedly truly and certainly! And see, therein is also contained the truest and most correct and only valid celebration of the Sabbath before God, as ordered by Moses! The actual day is of very little or even no importance, but that you, during the day or even at night in the love and rest of your heart, like to think about God and converse with Him, is everything. And see, how also the third commandment of Moses is contained in the one commandment of love!

Who thus truly loves God above all, has certainly recognized Him and has a living faith, gives to God all honor and surely will most often think about Him. And who does this cannot sin against God anymore. Or can a bride sin against her bridegroom, if she loves him beyond measure and also knows that he loves her even more? No, certainly not, since both have become one in their hearts through love! Who loves God truly above all and therefore has become one with Him through love, will also love his fellow man as equal children of God, just as he loves himself, and shall do to them, what he with a clear reason wants that other people should do to him."



The Soul's Process of Pre-Development

Ref: Vol. 2 The Soul and Life of Adam and Cain – Ch1:22

God the Father is speaking: "It is difficult to convince people of the fact that they had already travelled an infinitely long path before they reached their existence as human beings. It is difficult, given that precisely this knowledge is not included in the Gospel, which is the foundation of every church organization. But God knows why He did not incorporate this knowledge, why He did not give his disciples the instruction to spread this knowledge, of which Jesus' disciples were most certainly informed. He only gave them the task of proclaiming the divine teaching of love, He made the commandments of love for God and one's



neighbor the subject of what they were to proclaim as Gospel to their fellow human beings, which were also proclaimed by Jesus as a human being on this earth. *For every person who lives up to this teaching of love will gain increasingly more knowledge and subsequently also find out about the human soul's infinitely long process of pre-development, which only has to pass its last test of will on earth.*

The commandment of love is, in fact, the first and most important commandment, a person will not benefit from any knowledge, and regardless of how profound it is, if he fails to live a life of love. *For even this knowledge would just be misconstrued intellectual information since only love is the key to realization and without love everything will remain incomprehensible, which is evident at the present time, since the said information will not be believed because it cannot be realized as long a person's thinking is not illuminated by love.* Everyone willing to love will dwell on it and not entirely reject it but he might perhaps question why such knowledge was not given to people earlier, why it isn't mentioned in the Book of Books. And the same answer applies that knowledge is only of value for a person if it has come alive through love. This is why every kind-hearted person will also be guided into deeper knowledge when the time is right. But since humanity is near the end they shall live even more responsibly. *The knowledge about the soul's process of preliminary development can increase this sense of responsibility in people which, in view of the near end, is not to be underestimated.* Even people who are as yet unable to believe can be prompted by thoughts to change their way of life. On the other hand, however, this knowledge is not necessary if a person lives a life of love according to God's will. Then he will receive the knowledge instantly when he enters the kingdom of the beyond; he will brightly and clearly recognize what appeared unbelievable or was entirely unknown to him on earth.

But during the last days everything possible will be done on the part of God for the human being to reach the goal with ease. His attention will be drawn to his earthly task and the great significance of fulfilling this task, and in view of the end he will also be informed of the previous development, although without proof. However, everyone could obtain this proof for himself if he lived a life of love which could enlighten him and also grant him the ability of spiritual vision. In that case a

person would also be able to observe the bustling spiritual activity within the various works of creation, he would come to see the lives of animals and plants in a different light, and he would no longer doubt that he, too, would have passed through all these stages of pre-development. But this presupposes a high degree of love, hence the divine teaching of love must always take priority, i.e., the human being's attained degree of knowledge or realization on earth depends on his fulfillment of the commandments of love. Love is absolutely necessary for the human being, but he does not need to be knowledgeable, because he can suddenly become brightly enlightened if he has lived a life of love on earth. And this is why you humans should not be surprised that the Gospel does not openly state something which nevertheless can be found concealed within, for the Word of God has various meanings, which only a person living in love will come to understand. Then he will also find many references regarding the human being's pre-existence in the creations of earth, and he will only ever attempt to pass his findings on to his fellow human being although they will only be believed if this person, too, is permeated by love."

NOTE: Jesus is speaking: "When the right time has come, then much shall also be written. (Gr VIII 79, 8) In those days to come, *My teaching will not be presented to men veiled in mystery, but wholly unveiled in its heavenly and spiritual significance, and that shall be the New Jerusalem that is to come down from the heavens upon earth.* Its light, men will then see how greatly those who went before them were deceived and misled by the false prophets, just as the Jews are by the Pharisees" (Gr IX 90, 2).

Incarnation of the Soul

Ref: Vol. 2 The Soul and Life of Adam and Cain – Ch1:24

God the Father is speaking: "The incarnation of a soul can take place when all substances, which have taken the earthly path within the many diverse creations and are thus developed, have joined together. ***The soul substance of every work of creation must be present in order to incarnate i.e. the human body becomes the cover for a soul which contains all works of creation in miniature within itself.*** The previous infinitely long earthly progress has resulted in the unification of all these substances who then await their last embodiment. They will be assimilated as soul into the human outer shell to experience the last stage of development. This incarnation is of varied duration due to the different substances state of maturity, which have had a certain amount of freedom during their preliminary stages already albeit they had acted under compulsion in accordance with God's will. However, in the last stages before embodiment as human being this compulsory condition was gradually eased so that certain instincts could be lessened or even increased. This subsequently resulted in a higher or lower degree of maturity which, in turn, determines the duration of the last embodiment as a human being. As soon as all soul substances have united as a human soul, they strive for the last embodiment on earth, because they know that the human shell is their last physical cover and that they can be free from all earthly restrictions afterwards. For that reason, the soul will only spend time where it is offered an opportunity to incarnate. Understandably it will incarnate where people's nature adapts to its own degree of

maturity, i.e. where people have the same instincts and attributes that match its own nature.

However, this does not exclude that a differently inclined soul would not try to incarnate with unfamiliar natured people in order to hasten its embodiment. But then it often has to struggle with added difficulties during its earthly life as its nature is not taken into account, and it is unable to fulfill the expected requirements. ***Nevertheless, since the soul knows the path of its earthly life in advance it is not stopped if it makes this choice itself,*** since it has the resources at its disposal to achieve its final maturity in every embodiment. Due to its earlier many diverse shapes it has every aptitude within itself at various degrees and can increase or reduce them at will. Thus, it is not incapable and the strength to do so is likewise given in accordance with its will. However, if it strives half-heartedly it will remain in the same state of maturity prior to its incarnation as a human being; in that case the incarnation has not resulted in higher development. Although at the time of death it will shed its physical cover but its desires and instincts, which it was meant to overcome during its earthly life, still connect it to the material world. Therefore, it has not taken full advantage of its earthly incarnation, and when it realizes that it has wasted the right to become a child of God and can no longer achieve it either, it experiences an indescribable state of remorse; even though it still has infinitely many opportunities in the beyond to arrive at the contemplation of God. ***Yet one day an incarnated soul has to give account before God how it has used earth's opportunities and what spiritual progress it has achieved at the time of death, because the embodiment as human being is a mercy that cannot be valued highly enough; it is a gift which the human being should cherish appropriately by doing whatever advances his development because he cannot return to earth again once he has left it.***

What is the World/Earth?

Ref: Vol. 1 Secrets of Creation Ch 5:240

God the Father is speaking: "Thus you can look at the world with all its creations as a kingdom belonging to My opponent, for it shelters all fallen spiritual substances, it is just that he is deprived of them during the time when they embody one form after another. And yet the world was created by My love, wisdom and might and My adversary has no part in it, despite the fact that it belongs to him he has no control over his world. And it has arisen in all its beauty, sheltering the most marvelous creations of all kinds. My love, wisdom and might can be noticed everywhere, and although I constrained the rebellious spiritual substances within these creations the act of creation was a happy one for Me which enabled My once emanated strength to become active again, because the strength I externalized as a 'being' refused to be active and by rejecting My strength of love also rendered itself incapable of it.

And thus, I gave this strength a task again, by bringing a world into existence with all its innumerable creations, but also with participation of the beings that had remained faithful to Me **for they, too, had the power to create**. They knew My thoughts, My plan of Salvation and experienced their working with Me as exceptional happiness. Their love concerned their fallen brothers whom they wanted to help lift out of the abyss. The fact that this process required an infinitely

long time from a human point of view did not bother them, for they were perfect and therefore lacked all concepts of time. ***Nor did the concept of time exist before the stage of the human being. It only started when the human being entered the creation as a self-aware being and it will not lose this concept of time and space again until he becomes perfect once more.*** And this concept of time can be seen in all creations, where every form, be it in the mineral, plant or animal world, always has a limited time span at its disposal and thus higher development always depends on certain periods, which thus also explain the perpetual changes which constantly can be observed in nature and which subsequently also determine the perpetual return of the seasons, of spring, summer, autumn and winter.

Everything took place in unsurpassed wisdom, which always and forever will remain unchanged as long as creation exists, for everything proceeds according to divine law. And the various different worlds are subject to different laws again. Yet each one contributes towards higher development, and each one takes the already achieved degree of maturity into account. This is why I look upon My creation with pleasure because I don't see in it the fallen spirits but only the means for their ascent, and I consider all means as an expression of My love and wisdom which one day will accomplish the return of the fallen spirits to Me. And you humans may take pleasure in My creation, for it offers you works of wonder which you are unable to create yourselves. You can only ever see and marvel, but you carelessly take no notice of what testifies to your Creator's wisdom, love and might. **And yet this whole world only came into being because of you, and you are its crowning glory, you are the once fallen spirits which are on the last short path of return. Everything you can see around you served to achieve your degree of maturity; you have merely overcome all these forms already.**

But in the last stage as a human being My adversary has power over you again which I cannot deny him but which you can take away from him yourselves by directing your will towards Me. And once more all beings of light will stand by you in order to support you in your battle against him, for they all want you to become free from him, who alone was the cause of the origin of the earthly world because he had pulled you down into the abyss. You, however, must decide for yourselves which lord you want to join, and this decision alone determines your fate in eternity."

Primitive Earth: The Nature of Matter and its Primordial Spirits

Ref: Vol. 1 Secrets of Creation Ch 5:298

God the Father is speaking: "It has already been mentioned that the purpose of matter is not contained merely in its physical existence. Perishing matter is relieved in a perpetual cycle by matter coming into being anew. Minerals and animals of every kind and description, as well as plants, come into being and perish. *Mountains whose peaks, several thousand years ago, ascended into the highest regions of the clouds are now less than half their original height. (50,000-60,000ft.) The sharpness of the winds, the dissolving powers of lightning and ice, removed those peaks and turned them into loose pebbles which, through rain, wind, and electricity, decompose little by little and are destroyed. These processes could not be carried out without the possibility of a change in the center of gravity in matter.*

Once there were huge animals on this Earth, and primeval forests with trees of gigantic proportions. Where are they now? Where is it possible to find even one of those trees which lived for a thousand years, and which yielded more wood than a small forest of the present day? Floods sank them all deep beneath the surface of the Earth's crust, when thousands of species of trees and animals perished. They are found as petrified bones and preserved as such until the time comes when the remains of these giant primeval animals will turn to ashes, the last remnants of all matter. Regarding the destruction of these primeval trees, whose remains are now mined as hard coal, it will not take long until inventions that require coal for heating will have consumed these last remnants.

(Note: These events took place long before the dinosaur period. God the Father is speaking: "In the beginning of Creation all animals were peaceful and fed on grass as I had established, in the perfection of what I had created. The huge animals that existed on earth during the Primordial time were peaceful and friendly, it represented a peaceful time before sin entered the world.") Ref: Conchiglia (July 12, 2014) Movimento D'Amore San Juan Diego)

Some will say that it is sad that everything in existence is heading towards annihilation, but I say: It is not sad at all! It is better that all matter and all flesh decompose in time, so that the life that is captured therein may be set free from matter, rather than that all free life in the end pass over into the death of matter. This cannot be My intention, because I, as the eternal omnipotent primeval force and might, am the most essential life, and therefore I can act only for life.

Since matter is but a means for the regulation and liberation of free life, it is impossible that a changeless existence could be its purpose. When, through matter, a life's assigned task has been fulfilled, it perishes again, as if it had never existed. On the whole, the matter is nothing more than a purposeful appearance of My determined will. This leads to the conclusion that it may be dissolved in the same way that it originated. This point of fixation is the main center of gravity in matter, the enlivening and preserving principle. If it is withdrawn from a material body, that is the end of the body.

In order that nothing may appear or vanish suddenly, I will never allow this principle of My will to withdraw in an instant. Neither will I allow it to seize a point at once and thereby allow something to come into existence or vanish immediately. The formation and decay of the immense celestial bodies take place at the slowest pace; why that is so should by now be easily understood. It is the same regarding the Earth, so that the center of gravity which gives her life is being reduced little by little, until she will also share the fate of all matter.

Now we know the reason for the change of the center of gravity in matter, how this causes its transitoriness, and in what the main principle of the center of gravity rests. If it were possible to see the center of gravity with physical eyes, the Earth's active center of gravity would present itself as a fire, flashing at the greatest speed through particular organs of the Earth and thus causing the necessary reaction that in all parts preserves the earthly body.

If you saw this fire with your spiritual eyes, you would discover a countless host of spirits which are kept on Earth through My will and impelled into a purposeful and particular activity. These are the primordial spirits, whose bondage compels them to actively stimulate the matter surrounding them, through which

they ascend higher and higher until, clothed in a lighter matter, they are able to pass overstep by step into a perfect free life. These kinds of spirits, which appear like fire to the physical eye, determine the entire composition of the matter of the active, enlivening center of gravity."

The Prehistory of the Creatures of the Earth.

Ref: Vol. 1 Secrets of Creation Ch 5:396

Jesus is speaking: "Pay very good attention to what I will tell you in answer to your question regarding the indestructible external and inner truth of life!

You see, as on countless other worlds like this earth, there had here existed prior to the first true men beings that in their outer form bore a considerable resemblance to the present-day human beings. And there have been many epochs on this earth, during which an earlier generation completely vanished and was always gradually replaced by another that was superior in some respect.

A very long time ago, before such races replaced one another, usually every 7,000 years but definitely every 14,000 years, the Earth became only animated by all sorts of plant life on the waterless parts and only after that all sorts of great and small warm-blooded animals gradually emerged. The kingdom of water animals and afterwards the amphibians however was already before the greatest vegetation of the dry lands extremely strongly and powerfully represented, just as the kingdom of all sorts of flying insects like the fly and thousands of their sort, and with them almost the same original types of birds, which of course now no longer exist, although the fly as the first living creature and as the beginning of all flying animals is the same till today on the planet and will remain so in the future.

When the Earth became ever more humus-rich and through frequent inner, greatest outbreaks of fire, through which the hardened underwater ground was broken up forcibly in many thousand points into long and outstretched ranges of mountains and also so formed through other powerful storms of the air and in the waters, so that both as a consequence of the greater and drier spaces, as their more solid ability to bring forth vegetation already more perfect beings equipped with more intelligence could find their subsistence. Only then the created men were called into individual existence through the wisest, eternal and almighty spirit of God.

From then on, they changed, as has already been shown, during for you all incomprehensibly long times on the Earth, and always one more perfect race suppressed the previous, less perfect one.

You see, over this dry point, which certainly stands raised more than twenty men's height over the sea level of this small lake, the sea has stood many thousand times a thousand times. It certainly was dry again with an often greatly changed form, just as now. And before 6000 years will pass by from now, it will find itself under the sea again and then in a time of about 9 to 10,000 years find itself dry again like now. That change will constantly happen on earth until the earth, or rather its matter, will have completely been transformed into life."

Hiram says, "Oh Lord and only Master of all life and existence! How will things stand for the people who will certainly also still exist then at another flood? They will all then be miserably drowned again!"

I say, "Oh not at all; for such periodic floods of the sea occur always very slowly and quite unnoticed, so that all the people can find sufficient time to escape the sea to the southern parts of the Earth, in *which the sea through its retreat will liberate extremely large dry areas of land, because in such periods it will flow more towards the north again. And like that it will be again at its retreat to the south.*

Thus, people have nothing at all to fear any more, and My spirit will lead them then so that they will take the right precautions a long time in advance. Have you understood that now a little?"

Hiram says, "Yes, it indeed seems to me as if I have understood it; but in order to reach a very clear insight into these never-before imagined and even less heard-of wonderful circumstances, which lie somewhere in the most enormous, great nature of the great world and its order, there more than my infinitely limited understanding is needed! I cannot possibly understand it in its basics; but I believe you at your word; for you are wise enough to know all this very exactly, since your spirit, as Aziona told me today, is supposed to be quite one in power, in sight and in highly most perfect realization with the spirit of the very highest divinity, which I do not see how that is possible, but I believe it, because you now have given us such extremely powerful evidence of this. Perhaps a time will still come for us in which we will see things better than now; but for now, we must only believe."

Prehistoric People-1

BD No. 9022 of 07/22/1965 taken from book 94

God the Father is speaking: "You only need to turn to Me with an appeal to grant you an explanation and I will not hesitate to answer. You don't realize that the act of creation has taken infinitely long periods of time, for you judge by your present concepts to time, whereas the act of creation necessitated eternities, which is rationally impossible for you to understand. Hence you are right in your assumption that the pre-Adamites lived long before the human being, who was recognized as the true human being due to his self-awareness, intellect, and free will. Yet this does not exclude the fact that these human beings had no knowledge of prehistoric people, they knew of their existence but described them as having lived long before themselves. But this only happened after the fall into sin, when I sent beings of light from above amongst people which enlightened them as to their past process through all creations. Prior to this they had no knowledge of it at all, and thus no idea about these human-like beings because, wherever people were created, these beings had become extinct. *However, since the growth of human population advanced only slowly, in keeping with the matured original spirits, the process of creation continued over a very long time, and thus the earth was not inhabited by people everywhere at once, whereas the pre-Adamites only became extinct when the creation work 'Man' began to appear.*

Pre-historic people therefore have never lived with human beings together at the same time, but the human being was created at different times since the conditions on earth, too, varied quite considerably and needed this diversity, because even the original spirits developed differently, which is not quite understandable to you humans yet. *It is not as if people were instantly created on earth, instead, everything took place such that one can speak of periodic creation, and every period brought forth such beings until the human being with self-*

awareness, intellect and free will appeared as the last work of creation. If I now use the term 'at the same time', then I mean the same period of creation which, however, was so long that it cannot be expressed with numbers, but that these pre-historic beings preceded the real human being because no concept of time exists for Me and to Me a thousand years are like a day. *And the whole act of creation took so long that people can no longer determine the length of time, only the fact that everything developed, from matter to the mineral and plant world, through the animal kingdom up to the human being, but that I also always created a new external shape for the tiny particles of soul as they developed further.*

Hence, the expression 'they developed into the next being' only relates to spiritual development, yet every external shape was a new creation which always vanished again once it had completely fulfilled its purpose, on account of which so many beings disappeared again once human beings came into existence who were able to create and shape according to their will. Thus, *people did not live alongside pre-historic beings*, but that does not rule out that they didn't inhabit the earth at the same time, they just lived so far apart that they had no knowledge of them, because the time had not yet come for the human being to find the right living conditions, he needed in order to survive there. Just one thing has to be clarified, that the earth was not populated at the same time with fully responsible people; they came much later, whereas the pre-historic people still existed wherever the earth was not yet sufficiently developed. It is difficult to give you humans an idea as to how the whole work of creation took place, for you are neither able to imagine the length of time in which this work was completed nor the immense space that had to be populated by the small particles of soul of the fallen original spirits.

This required great diversity, which was entirely achieved by My thoughts, so that I saw everything as a minute work of creation before Me and it simultaneously arose as finished work, so that the creation took on ever larger forms wherein the soul particles were to mature, and it was teeming with creations of the most varied kinds, so that I placed every work of creation where possibilities to mature were given. And thus, the pre-historic beings were a creation which I placed wherever the future human race was sooner or later expected to take possession of the earth in order to bring its developing process to an end. But that the earth should exhibit the same conditions everywhere was not intended by My versatile creative will, and even today there are vast stretches of land where no human being can exist because he lacks the conditions to survive, for which I have My reasons. Yet it is certain that the human being's external shape was a work of My love, that I created Man after My image and that his soul, too, shall one day become My image again which, however, was not the case with pre-historic people, they were unable to develop into the human being as he is at present, irrespective of whether he attains spiritual maturity or not."

Prehistoric People-2

BD No. 9023 of 07/23/1965 taken from book 94

God the Father is speaking: "And if you think that I let you believe something that is wrong you must always consider that you harbor intellectual misconceptions, since the intellect can easily interfere if your contact with Me is not firmly established, but also consider that I always endeavor to clarify even seemingly

apparent discrepancies, for you shall be instructed according to truth. The slow development towards ascent often led people to believe that it was to be understood as a purely physical development, hence relating to the external form, however, only the spiritual development was meant by it, the ascent of the substances of soul within every individual work of creation.

And thus, My work of creation included countless external forms, which in groups can certainly be referred to as the same creations but which, even then, still consisted of infinitely many groups where one differed again from the other but always continued as the same species, thus there can be no question of higher development as such. However, as the substances of soul continued to mature, new external forms also arose time and again which only were concluded when the work of creation 'Man' came into being, who then had to fulfill the last task on earth: to spiritualize himself, to change himself into the living creation he had been in the beginning, in order to then be able to end his earthly path and return to Me from where he had originated.

The fact that all these pre-historic creations had to contribute towards this change was an exceedingly happy process for Me which sooner or later had to lead to success. Yet to inform a human being of this, who only has a limited intellectual capacity, is only possible to some degree, albeit in the state of light he can instantly comprehend all correlations and the purpose of every external form. But for earthly life it is enough if he receives sufficient light in order to roughly grasp the process of return so that he can also give his fellow human beings a faint idea about the meaning and purpose of creation. And then it depends on every individual person as to what extent he will delve into My eternal plan of Salvation, which only ever aims to achieve My living creations' happiness."

Development of Earth and Human Being

Ref: Vol. 2 The Soul and Life of Adam and Cain – Ch 2:53

God the Father is speaking: "You can come to Me with complete truth and ask Me any question that moves you, for I will always answer it such that it will help you. However, you can only grasp a limited amount of knowledge, yet what I impart to you is sufficient in order to grant you an insight into My eternal plan of Salvation, it is also sufficient for you in order to explain it to and teach other people, and in order to reveal to you My love, wisdom and omnipotence. And I will add to this knowledge the more you progress yourselves, the more receptive you become to My light and strength, for it is My aim that you shall become as perfect as you were in the very beginning, and this also involves profound realization, the comprehensive knowledge about My reign and activity, about My Nature and your goal.

It took an infinitely long time for you humans to advance from the abyss to the point which permits human existence. This infinitely long time until the development up to the human being had occurred was necessary because everything can only develop in lawful order, no phases of development can be left out at will, hence these phases of development had to take place in accordance with My eternal plan of Salvation and thus appropriate creations were also required for this development, which as 'pre-historic' has become a concept to you. Although the human need for research certainly attempts to calculate the duration of this pre-

historic time yet only with very limited success, for the slow advancement of the spiritual substances, as well as the emergence of creation, which you are now able to behold as human beings, has taken eternities; they were infinitely long periods of time for which the word 'eternities' is certainly the right word. ***The concept of time, however, only began when the living creation 'Man' was called into being by Me, for prior to that the living beings were not rational enough as to enable them to think and reason independently, as to enable them to live consciously and to grasp the concepts of 'past - present and future'.***

Only the being endowed with common sense and free will can be called 'a human being', which was sufficiently capable of thinking in order to acquire a certain amount of realization and live accordingly. *Hence from this time onwards one can speak of the conscious development towards ascent, where the once fallen spirits were given the opportunity to return to Me for good. The creation of the first human being was the beginning of a period of Salvation where free will became the crucial factor and not My will, as was the case in pre-historic times, where everything took place under the law of compulsion which irrevocably had to result in higher development.* And now you wonder how long the 'human being' has populated the earth already, whereby you only ever mean the rational human being who is capable of making his own free decisions and as whose descendants you regard yourselves.

The first human being capable of accepting responsibility for his actions and thoughts was Adam, even though human-like beings already existed before Adam in all parts of the world who instinctively carried out much of which is assumed was human thinking but who nevertheless were impelled by spiritual intelligences, who thus served ascending spiritual substances as a shell and in the law of compulsion carried out what was needed for the development of the creation of Earth, to become a dwelling place for future human beings. They were human species whose instincts and compulsive impulses broke through incredibly strongly but who nevertheless could not be held responsible because they, too, contributed towards the fact that spiritual substances were constantly released and able to embody themselves anew, because everything just served to prepare an area for the human being which was suitable to pass their last test of will. These human-like beings were therefore physically already very akin to the form I had prepared for the human being Adam when the time for the fallen original spirits had come to have their free will returned in order to then be able to liberate themselves from the form altogether. Time and again pre-historic creations released spiritual substances, and the development of what to a certain extent had advanced the whole emergence of earth in its bound state continued to progress, and thus the time eventually came for this spiritual substance to make a free decision.

And this was the beginning of the epoch of Salvation which is of significance for you because it enabled the being to use its free will and intellect and thus live a conscious life. However, the beginning of this epoch is so infinitely far in the past that you humans are unable to make any relevant calculations, yet due to My will the most important periods and their events remain known to you, and although you also divide them into well-ordered timespans, it is entirely irrelevant for your own development. Yet the endless number of fallen spirits necessitates an infinitely long time of higher development, therefore you are no longer capable of estimating the duration of the pre-historic time, just as the embodiment as a human being will

have to take place on such a large scale that it will take eternities. It will not be possible for you humans to determine the beginning of this epoch scientifically, yet you will always believe otherwise, because it is in the human being's nature while he is still imperfect that he mentally limits everything that is in the past, but never wants to acknowledge that there is a limit for the time ahead of him, consequently he does not reject a beginning, but an end seems impossible to him. *The former, however, is irrelevant whereas the latter is so extremely important that the human being should direct his whole attention only to what lies ahead of him, that one period of Salvation will come to an end, as did so many before, but that My eternal plan of Salvation will remain, that there will never be an end as far as the act of Salvation is concerned, that an endless number of fallen spirits also require an infinitely long time for their return and that time and again I will give these spirits the opportunity to ascend from the deepest abyss to the light, to Me, from Whom they once came."*

Who was Embodied in Adam?

Ref: Vol. 2 The Soul and Life of Adam and Cain – Ch4:123



God the Father is speaking: "And one of those fallen original spirits was Adam, whose soul was entitled to embody itself as a human being due to its maturity, but this nevertheless did not protect him from falling for a second time, because once again his free will failed, but not because he was too weak to make the right decision."

God the Father is speaking: "You will always be directed correctly by My spirit and mentally guided into truth. I have given you this promise, and it will come to pass as soon as you want to be instructed by Me Myself through the spirit. For My spirit in you is My share, it therefore knows all that which you would like to know. In the beginning only supremely perfect spirits existed, for My tireless spirit of love created them for its own happiness. This spirit of love yearned to receive the same love in return, it yearned for a like-natured being, and possessing it initiated the act of creation, insofar as that this being came forth from Me first. From then on, I wanted to share with it the bliss of creating, because it is extraordinarily blissful for a perfect being to time and again create through its will and strength the same beings in all magnificence and constant urge to love, which thus resulted in creating. And My first-created being, Lucifer or the bearer of light, experienced the pleasure of creating in the same way, and it was inconceivably happy. I allowed it complete freedom, for it was devoted to Me in profound and purest love, I did not limit its creative power since My strength of love constantly permeated this first created being and because its will, too, was entirely free but nevertheless utterly concurred

with Mine, because its love for Me shone brightly to the highest degree. Consequently, only like-natured, supremely perfect beings were able to emerge from this bond of love, beings, which were true images of Me Myself, just as the first-created spirit had been in the beginning. When the division of his will started, when Lucifer, in full possession of strength and light, began to compare himself with Me, when his love occasionally lessened and a certain amount of selfish love broke through, it also occasionally lessened the bright shine of his nature, and this affected the beings as well. Nevertheless, these beings had been created through his will and thus My permeation of strength, they equally still emerged in supreme perfection but now and then also started to direct their will wrongly, since it was and remained completely free in all beings which arose from our mutual will and strength. The beings took on the nature of their creator but since My strength of love was their fundamental substance, they were also divinely natured; they were perfect because nothing imperfect can emerge from Me and My strength, however, free will is part of a perfect being and this was able to develop in every direction.

Thus, it cannot be said that the beings were forced to conform to their creator's nature, because the strength from Me, which was always involved in the creative process, always guaranteed that, after the first being was created, nothing inferior would emerge from its creator's will, because free will is bestowed upon every being and this required every being to experience its own test of will. And this free will resulted in the fact that the fall into the abyss also included beings which emerged from us first, whose intense light of love should never have allowed for it but who misused their free will just as Lucifer, the bearer of light himself, whose exceedingly magnificent nature should never have come to fall because he possessed brightest realization. But for this reason, his (Lucifer's) fall has to be condemned even more just like the fall of those first beings, just as, the other way round, the later created beings stood firm and detached themselves from him (Lucifer) when they were allowed to use their right of self-determination and chose their Lord. *And one of those fallen original spirits was Adam, whose soul was entitled to embody itself as a human being due to its maturity, but this nevertheless did not protect him from falling for a second time, because once again his free will failed, but not because he was too weak to make the right decision. He wanted to be greater than God.* That was his original sin, and it was the renewed sin in paradise. And I wanted to create children for Myself who see their Father in Me and after whose love I longed, because My immeasurable love constantly desires reciprocation. This love was the basis for My whole act of creation, the creation of all original spirits and later of earthly-material creations, because I want to attain this love one day, if only after an infinitely long time. Time and again I try to make you humans understand the magnitude and profundity of My love, yet as long as you have not become love yourselves, as long as you have not shaped yourselves such that My strength of love can permeate you again as in the beginning, you will be unable to comprehend the depth of My love. However, you should know that you are able to touch My heart, that I will fulfill your every wish, that I guide you into truth and bestow light upon you because I know that only light causes happiness, because light originates from love and you possess all My love, even if you are unable to feel it. But time and again I will provide you with the evidence of it."

God Breathed a Living Soul into Adam

Ref: Vol. 2 The Soul and Life of Adam and Cain – Ch4:125

God the Father is speaking: "But the life in you is actually nothing but My breath in you or My perfect image in every human being. And as I am forever and perpetually in a state of the clearest awareness of My very own most perfect life, thus every created being has for you an incomprehensibly tiny part of this life of Mine which keeps it fully alive for its particular needs.



However, all life is of such a nature that it can constantly increase and grow thanks to My incessant flowing in; and the more life has grown the more perfectly it manifests. But life becomes aware of itself only when it receives with the little spark of love also a little spark of the light of grace out of God. With this light the existence of life recognizes its being and becomes freely aware of itself. When this life is not only aware of itself, *but becomes also aware of its eternal, holy origin*, offers Him thanks, praise, love and adoration and recognizes the will of the One Who created it, only then does it become completely free and with this knowledge through love a child of eternal Love and eternal Life; and only through this life will it arrive at the clearest awareness of itself and a living awareness of the One Who is now carrying you on His arm." Ref: "The House of God" by Jakob Lorber Chapter 185

God the Father is speaking: "My eternal plan of Salvation intends to bring about the deification of your souls, which indeed had once been divine and perfect beings, yet they forfeited this perfection of their own free will. You humans should know that I did not externalize you from Me as imperfectly as you are now, that I undeniably created the human form, but the soul, which animates this human form, had already spent an infinitely long time of changing its voluntarily fashioned, completely wrong state to such an extent that it was able to dwell in the human form in order to attain complete deification again. You must know that I did not create you imperfectly to then demand of you as human beings to perfect yourselves, because nothing imperfect can emerge from Me. Once you are in possession of this knowledge you will also consider your earthly existence from a different point of view. You will realize that it is not an end in itself but the means to an end. However, as long as you are lacking this knowledge you justifiably believe that you may use your earthly life purely for the sake of improving your physical well-being. You believe that you may use your energy of life purely physically, even if you aspire to the goal that every individual person should improve himself ethically in order to achieve a better human race. But you don't understand the spiritual task of the individual yet. *The human being himself is not the final goal, the existence as a human being is merely the final opportunity on this earth to reach the highest goal.* And the teaching that I 'created man so that he should love Me, be of service to Me, in order to thereby enter Heaven' is only justified if the human existence is looked upon as a limited stage for the soul which once became imperfect, otherwise this teaching will lead to wrong ideas, such as the one that something 'imperfect', the soul, was joined to the human being at birth, that thus something imperfect was brought to life by Me. This not only confuses the image of My nature, which is supremely perfect, but also people's train of thought, who do not grasp their actual

task on earth and will therefore be increasingly more worldly orientated because a wrong concept is being developed in them.

Although through love for Me and selfless service the human being could indeed be able to attain the right realization and subsequently beatitude, it will nevertheless prevent love being kindled towards a Being which uses its creative strength for the emergence of imperfect creations; and even selfless service lacks the right motivation if people are unaware of the perfect spirits' former apostasy from Me, which consisted of the fact that they wanted to rule with arrogance, hence they discarded the principle of love. Their imperfection was caused by the beings themselves. However, the fact that you are imperfect as a human being cannot be doubted, and therefore you must first try to ascertain the reason for your imperfection and not be satisfied with the explanation that I created you the way you are on earth now. **But the latter is endorsed by all those who portray the act of creation of the human being such that a 'soul' is 'created' at the same time for this human being, which they deem they can justify on account of the Words 'God breathed a living soul into him.'** *The fact that this living soul is a formerly fallen original spirit is not known to them, but this knowledge could be discovered by every individual person if only he seriously questioned the meaning and purpose of earthly life and his task on earth.* And even a misguided teaching could make a person question, if only he wanted to gain clarification. And especially the teachers who guide people should first attain clarification themselves, which they can receive at any time by merely turning to Me Myself if slight doubts, which everyone can feel arise within himself during deliberation, would make them turn to the right source, where purest trust will refresh anyone who desires it. The reason why there is so much darkness amongst people that misguided teachings were able to spread is due to people's indifference towards the truth, for it is available and within reach for everyone who seriously desires the truth. Yet only a few try to penetrate My eternal plan of Salvation, but for them everything is obvious, and they are brightly enlightened because the Light of eternity Itself kindles it in all those who want to escape the darkness." BD No. 6599 of 07/19/1956 taken from book 71

Creation of Eve - Genesis 3:21-24

So, The Lord God cast a deep sleep on the man, and while he was asleep, he took out one of his ribs and closed up its place with flesh. The Lord God then built up into a woman the rib that he had taken from the man. When he brought her to the man, the man said: "This one, at last, is bone of my bones and flesh of my flesh; This one shall be called 'woman,' for out of 'her man' this one has been taken."



That is why a man leaves his father and mother and clings to his wife, and the two of them become one body.

Creation of Eve

Ref: Vol. 2 The Soul and Life of Adam and Cain – Ch4:127

Jesus is speaking: "When man awoke from his first sleep and found his companion by his side, he felt that his happiness had been rendered complete by God. It was already great beforehand. Everything in Adam and around Adam had been made so that he could enjoy complete happiness, healthy and holy, and the delight that is Eden was not only around but also *within* Adam. The garden full of plant, animal, and marine beauty surrounded him; however, within him, a garden of spiritual beauty blossomed with every kind of virtue, ready to mature into fruits of holy perfection; and there was the Tree of Knowledge suited to his state, and the tree of the Supernatural Life: Grace; neither were the precious waters of the divine spring missing which divided itself into four branches and always sprinkled the virtues of man with a new wave so that they could grow gigantically and turn him even more so into a faithful mirror of God.

As a natural creature, he enjoyed what he saw: the beauty of a virgin world that just a short while ago had come from the will of God; he enjoyed what he could: his dominion over the lower creatures. Everything had been placed by God at the service of man: from the sun to the insect so that everything would be a delight to him.

As a supernatural creature, he enjoyed - reasoning and most gentle ecstasy - the understanding of the Essence of God: Love; of the relationships of love between the Immense One who gave Himself and the creature who loved by adoring Him. Genesis veils this faculty of man and this communicating to him by God in the phrase: 'having heard the voice of God walking in Eden in the cool of the evening.'

As much as the Father had given knowledge to His adoptive children proportioned to their state, He still continued to teach them. Because infinite is the love of God, and after having yearned to give again, and so much more does He give, the more the creature is a daughter to Him. God always gives Himself to the one who gives himself generously to Him.

Therefore, when man awoke and saw the woman made in his likeness, he felt that his happiness, as a creature, was complete by having all the humanity and all the super-humanity, being that the Love gave Himself to the love of man."

The Creation of Eve – Adam's rib!

Ref: Vol. 2 The Soul and Life of Adam and Cain – Ch 4:128

Jesus is speaking: "Your comments on Moses are not so wide of the mark, if measured on the scale of current earthly comprehension but, in the judgment of the spirit, Moses is something entirely different than he appears to you to be in your criticism of the text. Furthermore, comparing the texts of the two versions, the first one does not differ too much from the second, as you suggested, since the later text is more of a commentary on the earlier text and more accurately describes the ways and means - even if it is the spiritual path that is chosen – which brought about the creation of man.

The way creation should be understood in terms of nature, I have even tonight already explained, as far as it is necessary for you to grasp. Furthermore, Mathael who is quite familiar with comparative science has explained to you yesterday how Moses' scriptures should be understood; and I must again comment,

My friend Cyrenius, that you really have a very short memory! A while ago I refreshed your memory, so that you are able to explore more freely with it, if you really wish. However, with regard to your doubts about the description of the creation of man as set down by Moses, I will only add a few pointers to set you off in the right direction so that you and a few others as well, can use them to work out the real truth of the matter.

You should consider that everything that Moses is saying and wishes to say in his description of creation refers solely and primarily to the upbringing and spiritual development of the first humans in general, and it therefore applies by inference to the very first human couple as well.

Furthermore, Adam's body has been created and given its shape in accordance with My Will and My established ordinance, as I have shown you a short time ago, using the ethereal elements of the finest clay on this earth. Once My Will had charged up his body with a wealth of experience and when it had reached the necessary level in its physical strength which compels it to transform itself into a fully active external sphere of life and when finally he fell into a deep sleep, exhausted by work and travel, only then had the moment arrived for a natural soul embracing all the levels in the natural world which are familiar to you, to enter the external sphere of Adam's life.

This soul, finding itself to be in the external sphere of his life, immediately began to create from the very attractive external elements in Adam's life sphere, or from the extremely rich vapors of life itself - just as even today the souls of some dead people will do if they seek to make a final brief appearance before mankind - and thus created a suitable companion in accordance with My will and My ordinances, a work completed within three days.

When Adam awoke, he was full of amazement and happiness seeing his image beside him, which of course was well disposed towards him as it had to be because its body originated from his own being.

However, he felt a pressure in the area of his heart even if it was quite a pleasant sensation and at times, he also had an empty feeling - this was the beginning of sexual love - and he could never distance himself from the image which was giving him so much pleasure. Wherever he went, the woman followed him, and wherever she went, he was quite unable to let her go alone. He appreciated the woman's value and her love and therefore said to her in a clairvoyant moment: 'We, I as a man and you as a woman grown from my rib (near my heart) in accordance with God's plan, are therefore one flesh and one body. You are the most treasured part of my life, and so it shall remain, for man will leave his father and mother (the man's seriousness and care) and will cling to his wife!'

Where it is written that God covered the part of Adam with flesh when he removed his rib, hopefully none of you will be so stupid as to assume that God seriously wounded Adam by cutting away a rib in order to make a large woman from it. The ribs are an outer, rigid defensive shield to protect the soft, internal organs of life.

When David said: 'God is our strong fortress and reliable shield!', did he mean that God is really a solid castle build with bricks, or a large body shield made of metal?!

The same thinking applies to the rib from which Eve was made! The rib is only symbolic of the true essence of the matter which is Adam's powerful love of life. That rib, which serves as a shield in this life, was chosen by Moses in his writings for the following reasons – firstly, since it protects life in man's environment as his outer shield, it can therefore represent this quality figuratively and, secondly, because later on a good, faithful and loving woman can also be regarded as a shield to shelter and protect her man's life, an apt metaphor for her man's rib – and finally the ethereal aura emanating from external life is also a very powerful shield to guard the natural life of the inner soul, without which no human could survive for longer than a few moments.

Now this Eva, to judge from her tender physical presence, was created from the exceedingly abundant ethereal aura of active life surrounding Adam and as this aura comes from the area of the ribs and the chest cavity and then surrounds a man in all directions for a considerable distance, Moses, who fluently made use of appropriate imagery in his language, was quite right to have Eve originate from Adam's rib and to have God cover the wound with her flesh. Eve was truly flesh which had its origin in the ethereal aura of Adam's physical life and it was God's intention to replace the portion which Adam had now lost. He therefore healed the wound with Eve's flesh which was very acceptable to Adam and was in fact also his own flesh."

Deliverance from Selflove to Rebirth

Ref: Vol. 2 The Soul and Life of Adam and Cain – Ch 4:130

Jesus is speaking: "And behold and comprehend what until now no one has beheld and comprehended: Eternal Love took that number out of Itself, and the number was the order and the eternal law within It, out of which and within which eternal Love has forever existed, is still existing and will be existing in all the might and power of the holiness of God. And It took clay, which is like the cream of the coagulated milk, and with the hand of Its might and the hand of Its power, according to the number of Its order, formed the first man and breathed into his nostrils the breath of life. And the breath became a living soul within him, and the soul fully pervaded the man who was made in accordance with the number of the order from which all the spirits had been made and the worlds in the spaces of infinity, the earth and everything on it, and the moon and the sun.

And lo, this first man on earth, who came forth from the hands of the might and power of eternal Love, was called by the mouth of merciful grace 'Adam', or 'Son of Mercy and Grace'.

Now take good note of this: This Adam was in the place of the first of the fallen spirits. It was not shown to him who he was, and since he did not recognize himself and could not find anything that was like him, he became bored.

And behold, imperceptible to the still blind eyes of his soul, eternal Love breathed on him and for the first time he fell asleep within the sweetness of merciful Love, whereupon merciful Love formed in the heart of Adam, as though in a pleasant dream, a figure, similar to him, of great charm and beauty.

And eternal Love saw what great joy Adam experienced through the inner contemplation of his second self. Then merciful Love touched him on the side where he had been given a heart, similar to the heart of the Deity, for the reception of love

and life from the love in God. Thereby It took away his self-love in order to prepare a dwelling-place for Itself through the future law of merciful grace and set the selflove, which gave Adam so much pleasure, outside of him in a material body and called it "Caiva" or, as you are used to say, 'Eve'. This was in preparation of the deliverance from self-love to rebirth.

And behold, merciful Love touched him and awakened him for the contemplation of his self-love outside of him and saw that he had great delight in the contemplation of his love outside of him and was extremely cheerful. And this love, which was now called 'Eve', had pleasure in the man Adam, bent towards him and followed his every movement.

And behold, eternal Love addressed Adam for the first time: Adam! And he spoke for the first time: 'Here I am, Lord of Glory, Might and Power!'

And eternal Love spoke again: 'Behold your helpmate!' And 'Eve' answered: 'Behold, O Lord, the maid lying obediently at the feet of Your son and awaiting his orders!'

And behold, merciful Love found great pleasure in the works of Its might and power through the grace of Its mercy and continued to speak and instruct them in all things, teaching them to know, to name and how to use them. And when they understood and knew all things and were able to use them, merciful Love again spoke to them: 'Now you have learnt of all things, you know them and are able to use them, except for one thing, and this I will now teach you and put into you the power to procreate and reproduce your kind. But you are not allowed to use it before My return when I find you clothed with the garment of obedience, humility, faithfulness, and chastity. However, woe upon you if I find you naked; I shall cast you out, and the consequence will be death!'"

Was Adam the only Human Being Created by God?

Ref: Vol. 2 The Soul and Life of Adam and Cain – Ch 4:131

Genetic evidence doesn't support the notion of all humans descending from one man and one woman, but rather from a population of individuals. Ref: Live Science By Tia Ghose October 30, 2014

God the Father is speaking: "But now the question will arise in you how the whole earth came to be populated with people. This is a valid question, for there were many original spirits when the first original spirit Adam embodied himself, and all of these original spirits wanted to continue their course of development and engender themselves as souls in a human being because they knew that their final return to Me could only take place in this way. And I also gave human covers to those original spirits who consciously wanted to take the path across earth. I created a large number of human beings, for only one thought by Me sufficed and *every fully matured original spirit received its external form, and each form was physically created such that procreation would take place in accordance with My will.* But I restricted the regions of the first forefathers. You should understand that I allocated the prepared land to the human beings.

Yet the first people, Adam and Eve, had to take the test of will, and as a result of their fall the whole human race became weakened. The disobedience against My divine commandment had, due to My adverse spirit Lucifer, likewise arisen in those original spirits, and the hereditary sin, which consisted of changing the pure, divine love into selfish love, was repeated in these human beings too, for My adversary

tempted all people, and his enticement succeeded because people still had too little knowledge of him who wanted to cause them to fall again. And people spread across the entire earth, but Adam was and remained nevertheless the founder of the human race, and people were informed of the descendants of his house and the following generations were recorded until the birth of Jesus, who descended to earth as a result of the inherited sin in order to redeem humanity.

Since Adam, after Lucifer, had been the first fallen original spirit, he was also the first to be embodied as a human being, and if he had observed My easy commandment, he very quickly would have shed his external form, and all other original spirits would soon have given up their resistance as well, they unconditionally would have given themselves to Me, and their return to Me would have been guaranteed. Yet his disobedience was another opposition to Me, it was a repetition of the first sin of rebellion against Me. However, owing to Adam's fall Lucifer had regained power, and he used it on each generation which, being as weak as Adam did not resist and remained weak until Jesus arrived in order to help them.

You humans should know that I populated the whole earth because many of the fully matured original spirits desired their last embodiment on earth and because every one of these original spirits was entitled to undertake the final test of will within the human being. There were a large number of them, and everyone had many followers, original spirits which had followed him and time and again joined him again. And for all these I chose the living conditions which suited their various inclinations, and thus, having created its human external form, I placed every original spirit appropriately, consequently reproducing himself corresponding to My will and My natural law. The procreation method was the same everywhere, which is why I always joined the original spirit with a second spirit.

Thus, the **creative** act of the first human being was repeated time and again in regions which were inaccessible for the individual human tribes, for My creation of the earth had been so comprehensive that the process of further development everywhere necessitated the original spirits to incarnate in the human being and for this I created the first prerequisites. And only after a long period of time had passed did the various tribes make contact with each other. Their spiritual development, however, had advanced entirely differently, all depending on the degree of love within each person. But they all can be instructed by Me Myself when their resistance diminishes and My commandments are heeded again, and the human souls will come to full maturity, for the divine Redeemer Jesus Christ accomplished the act of Salvation for all human beings, and the knowledge of it can also be brought to all human beings through people or through the working of My spirit. Nevertheless, Adam's direct descendants will accept this knowledge more easily and hence belong to the human generation which will find redemption while still on earth, so that the souls will be able to become free while still on earth if they accept Jesus Christ's act of Salvation Who, apart from the original sin, also took Adam's past sin upon Himself and thus purchased humanity's salvation from My adversary through His death on the cross."

The Fall

Ref: Vol. 2 The Soul and Life of Adam and Cain – Ch 4:132

Jesus is speaking: "Thereupon eternal Love covered Its face and withdrew for a certain time in accordance with the number of orders, was blind out of the depth of Its mercy and would not, and could not, know what the newly created would do in the judgment of the Deity for their freedom-test during the short time on earth through the love of mercy. *And the place that was given them as a dwelling-place was a valley and a garden on the firm part of the earth and was called Paradise. That was the land which later abounded with milk and honey and was the place which in the great Time of times, when eternal Love performed the greatest of Its acts, was called - and will forever be called - 'Bethlehem'. This was the spot where the eternal Word bodily in the flesh saw for the first time the light of Its grace shine upon the drop of mercy from the distant sun, the moon and all the stars.*

Bethlehem is such a holy place that no man will ever discover its true location. If any man or Archaeologist were to dig in such a location, they will die instantly! The true location of Bethlehem will never be found!" Ref: The Household of God by Jacob Lorber: Chapter 7,8

And behold, their desire kept growing in the judgment of the Deity testing them in Its wrath. There was a tree standing in the garden bearing the most beautiful apples, and Eve felt a great desire for them and said to Adam: 'Look, Adam, I feel a great desire for this fruit. If you want it, I shall pick one and taste it and then hand it to you as a first gift from my hand.'

And Adam was silent, pondering the words of Eve. And an inner voice, which was holy as it came from the Deity within him, spoke to him: "If you eat from the fruit of this tree, you shall die!" This gave Adam such a fright that he was unable to answer his beloved Eve.

And the desire rose within Eve, drew her beneath the tree and made her pick an apple from it. Adam now felt that Eve had become disloyal to his heart. He became saddened and said:

'Eve, Eve, what are you doing! The Lord of might, power and life has not yet blessed us. You are holding the fruit of death in your hand; throw it away, that we may not die in our nakedness before the Lord of justice!'

And behold, the earnestness of Adam frightened Eve in her desire, and she let the fruit of death drop to the ground. And she was freed from her desire, and Adam was very pleased at being liberated from the deadly snares of Eve's desire.

But behold, the desire Eve had banned from her heart was now lying on the ground and through the might of the condemning wrath of the Deity formed into the shape of a great serpent; it took the fruit of death into its jaws, crept up the tree, twisted round it and all its branches and twigs from the root to the top and kept staring at Eve. Eve saw it and gazed at the serpent, and through Eve also Adam became aware of it, but he did not see the serpent as yet.

And behold, Eve approached the serpent and gazed with great delight at its seductive movements around the tree and the opalescent colors of its cold scaly skin.

The serpent, however, moved and placed the apple into the lap of the now sitting Eve, lifted its head and spoke to Eve as follows:

'Eve, behold the daughter you have cast out, winding round the tree of your desire. Do not reject the small gift I have put into your lap but enjoy without fear the fruit of your love; not only will you not die, but you will be filled with the knowledge of all life about God Whom you fear, whereas He is weaker than you!' And lo, the tongue of the serpent split into two and became more pointed than an arrow. The serpent bent its head towards Eve's breast as though it would kiss her after the manner of a child, but it sank its two venomous fangs into the breasts of Eve, and Eve recognized herself in the serpent.

Now also Adam became aware of what was going on under the tree, and he was delighted with the second Eve, not realizing that it was only a serpent. And behold, he too became enflamed with desire and, lusting for the second Eve, took the fruit from the lap of Eve, became disloyal to his love and enjoyed the forbidden fruit from the body of Eve lustfully. And in this enjoyment, he recognized himself as the First who was lost because of the great conceit of his blind self-love in the kingdom of light of eternal Love and that he had fallen into the sea of wrath of the forever inexorably slaying Deity.

And now behold, as he thus recognized himself, and so did the deluded Eve through him, great remorse rose from the bottom of his heart and Eve was ashamed when she became aware of her nakedness and that of Adam, and in her great dismay she covered her nakedness with leaves from a fig tree. Adam too stretched out his hands for the leaves to cover his nakedness, hid himself in a cave and shed tears of great grief; and Eve hid herself behind a thorn bush and grieved bitterly over her guilt of seduction."

The Earth was Cursed Because of Adam's Sin

Ref: Vol. 2 The Soul and Life of Adam and Cain – Ch 5:171

God the Father is speaking: "The world is populated; rather, it has been populated from the beginning by unreasonable creatures and by reasonable creatures. Populated not so there could be many of every species, but because many were the species of the unreasonable creatures, and above these, was the pair of the two creatures endowed with reason and with a spiritual and immortal soul, very different from the one which is called 'living soul' in Chapter 1:30 of Genesis and which was not but the breath for which in the Book, it is written of them who 'had breath in their nostrils.' And all things that had been made were 'good' to the judgment of the same God Creator who is absolute and perfect Goodness.

They were 'very good.' Of what goodness: Only that of serving as an aid to man in cultivating Eden, or as food, or as a delight? That is, of a passive goodness because that is what they had to do, or of a servile goodness towards man, a creature different from every other because of his erect position, the magnificence of his walk, the beauty of his face, the power of his actions and voice, for that dominion peculiar to a reasonable being which manifests itself in his secure will, in his decisive command, in his capacity of rewarding or punishing justly all things which command the inferior being to a natural subjection?



No. They were 'very good' because they were still lacking in savageness, and wickedness and cunning; and the lion dwelled with the young sheep, and the wolf with the lamb, and the leopard with the kid, and the young ones of the bear gazed with those of the mare, just as it transpires from verse 19 of the second chapter of Genesis, when it is said that Adam familiarly stays with all the animals of the earth and of the air, by giving a name to them all, without suffering an insult from the most ferocious ones amongst them, nor without striking fear in any of them since they were good and they felt instinctively that man, too, was "good", who would not have punished them without having had a motive to do so; and so, too, *as Isaiah predicts that it shall be, when 'the knowledge of the Lord,' that is, the kingdom of the spirit will have truly filled the Earth.* (Isaiah XI:6-9)

Then Adam sinned and the Earth was cursed because of him, and from amongst the many tribulations which she [the Earth] bore to the fallen man, because he made himself in subordinate to God, was that of the insubordination of the inferior creatures towards him. And he, besides drawing with toil his daily nourishment from the Earth that had become cursed, had to struggle to defend himself from the animals that were no longer good, rebellious towards him as he towards the Creator, enemies amongst themselves because the disorder had by now established its kingdom, which will last until the coming of the day of the Lord and of his kingdom, and heaven and earth as they are now will disappear and there will be a new heaven and a new Earth, Apocalypse 21:1 and the suffering of creatures will end.

Because the day and the eternal kingdom will truly have come for all the children of God who, until that day, will always have to struggle, sigh and groan, so as to generate the 'son of God' from themselves, born as such not 'of blood nor of the will of the flesh,' but for having received the divine Life, by having received the Word made Man, He of whom Isaiah writes, repeating the words of the eternal Word, 'I have redeemed you and have called you by [your] name: you are mine, I am your Savior.'

Devils Plan to Destroy Humanity

Ref: Vol. 2 The Soul and Life of Adam and Cain – Ch 5:172

Genesis 4:1 **The Man had relations with his wife Eve, and she conceived and bore Cain, saying, "I have produced a man with the help of the Lord."**

"I AM the Father Conchiglia, and my glory is the Living Man. It is you I have chosen to glorify the Mother of My Son Jesus. It is you I have chosen to glorify My Church. Leave outside of you every voice that will break out against you because those empty of Me can neither understand nor comprehend. That which I am about to tell you will unleash even more the envy of Lucifer that will shake the earth as it has never done. It will be an overturn of everything, and nothing will remain in place because his goal has always been to destroy Humanity, to destroy My children, to destroy Man whom I have created in My Image and Likeness. Oh Man! My Creation! My project on him was and still marvelous and for this reason Lucifer was and is still envious and jealous.

Conchiglia, moreover it is time to tell you things that I have not said because it was not time, and since it is to you that I have entrusted the "Secret of the King" it is within you that I have kept the "precious pearl" and the pearl is born from the

conch. Listen daughter, Man's creation began on Planet Earth the most beautiful Planet of the Universe, rich in everything that would worthily serve to receive Man created in My Image and Likeness. Yes, upon Planet Earth it all started. "Project Humanity" started then; it would spread through the earth. The First Man, Adam was created most intelligent with supernatural gifts unimaginable to you, precisely in My Image and Likeness. Yes, upon Planet Earth it all started. "Project Humanity" started then; it would spread throughout the Universe.

The First Man, Adam was created most intelligent with supernatural gifts unimaginable to you, precisely in My Image and Likeness. What I am going to say, takes place within "a space-time" that does not exist and that no one can link to years and seasons if not roughly and tentatively. The Adam and the Innocent Woman, the First Couple. *The Adam and 'ancestor-prehuman-female' conceived Cain, the first Hybrid.* The Adam and the Innocent Woman conceived the "first genetically pure child" even to My Image and Likeness, Abel (a Child of God). After him, other children genetically pure, but also after Cain there were other hybrids. Both the 'pure' and the 'hybrid,' intelligent different, however, in their exteriority, and Death entered the World.

To simplify I will say, that Good and evil coexisted on the same grounds. Both have colonized Planet Earth and have evolved in its own scope. One lived more, others lived less. Pure living longer, pure children had a longer gestation time, while the hybrids had a shorter gestation time, and so developed more in number. Both the pure and hybrids have progressed in science to the point of colonizing other Planets and bring their 'different lives' onto other Planets, there to multiply, and so Man spread onto many Planets of the Universe in times to come.

The sin of pride and hybridization at Adam had by now proclaimed, and centuries and centuries succeeded with the First Man still alive because it was created with all the supernatural gifts necessary for him to live on the Earth and hence accomplish the 'procreation-collaborative project.' The rebellion and arrogance had exceeded all limits and degrees and now Adam was self-assured of himself, so he challenged Me and fathered, with his semen without the natural contact, and experimented to create other hybrid breeds; so many, with different characteristics.

These hybrid beings of many races were still very smart and over the turn of centuries have ventured across Planet Earth and other planets, colonizing. And so on other planets lived 'pure children and hybrid children' each with its own characteristics. Their goal was to conquest and power so wars after war succeeded on earth, and other planets in heaven. And wars still exist.

Adam was the First Man created by Me, then became filled with arrogance and rebelled and gave life and started the "alien extraterrestrial race" and not the other way around as self-proclaimed scholars speculate. The evil alien races, you call them devils. The alien race that loves me, you call them angels. You have defined them 'gods' 'your creators' and they behave so that you believed it to better subjugate and enslave you. You have considered and still consider them superior beings to you, most advanced but instead, in the beginning 'you are superior, 'pure children' before hybridization.

Because of wars and resulting catastrophes once again Planet Earth had to start again and almost all memory lost, and those who were 'younger siblings'

preserving the Love for Me have evolved and will appear as your older siblings. Planet Earth now cohabits, 'good' alien beings and 'evil' alien beings; the good ones to defend and protect Planet Earth from yourselves and the wicked ones to manipulate and destroy your habitat to conform it to their biological nature."

Who was the "ancestor-pre-human-female" that Conceived Cain?

Our Lord has already mentioned that He populated the whole earth because many of the fully matured original spirits desired their last embodiment on earth and because every one of these original spirits was entitled to undertake the final test of will within the human being. There were a large number of them, and everyone had many followers. And for all these Our Lord chose the living conditions which suited their various inclinations, and thus, having created its human external form, He placed every original spirit appropriately, consequently reproducing himself corresponding to His will and His natural law. The procreation method was the same everywhere, which is why Our Lord always joined the original spirit with a second spirit.

The reason why the "ancestor-prehuman-female" is called "prehuman" is because she existed before Eve and is not from the direct line of Adam and Eve. *God gave human covers to those original spirits who consciously wanted to take the path across earth. The "ancestor-prehuman-female" was one of those spirits. It was through the blessing that God gave to Adam, that Eve was created and gave birth to the "first genetically pure child" who was in the Image and Likeness of God, Abel (a Child of God).*

Since there is no name mentioned for the "ancestor-prehuman-female" that gave birth to Cain, the first hybrid, you could easily have called her "Hagar" after the Egyptian slave woman that Abraham had relations with and caused the descendants of their son Ishmael to be born into slavery because they were descendants from Hagar, the Egyptian slave of Sarai (Abraham's wife). Ishmael was also a hybrid because he was not from the direct line of Abraham and Sarah. Ishmael's descendants were called the "children of the flesh" just like Cain. It was only after Abraham received the blessing from God that Isaac was born and thus became the "child of the promise."

Adam received the blessing from God, which took place many years after the birth of Cain, when Eve was created from the rib of Adam and gave birth to Abel. Abel, who was a child of God, was overcome by the evil of his brother, Cain, and became the first pure child of God to be martyred. Cain, no longer a child of God had fled God to accept Satan, just like Ishmael, and became just like his father, and like his father, he ventured precisely into what was illicit, degrading, and bestial. This evil became so corrupt that it brought down God's wrath on mankind because evil had contaminated almost all of God's children.

It is the free will of man that decides the future and eternal destiny. As it was through Adam's will that made him fall, as it was through Cain's will in becoming a fratricide and fugitive by giving origin to the children of the flesh, that is, to those who have come out of every law, moral as well.

From Adam on, everything has been corrupted by those who have followed suit. Remember that "Cain was the fruit of Adam" and the first to kill "a Son of God,"

Abel. And from then until now because of Original Sin the killers can no longer be counted.

However, Adam's direct descendants from Eve and Abraham's direct descendants from Sarah, will accept divine knowledge more easily and hence belong to the human generation which will find redemption while still on earth, so that the soul will be able to become free while still on earth if they accept Jesus Christ's act of Salvation. Who, apart from the original sin, also took Adam's past sin upon Himself and thus purchased humanity's salvation from His adversary through His death on the Cross.

Knowledge of Adam

Ref: Vol. 2 The Soul and Life of Adam and Cain – Ch 5:174

The Holy Spirit is speaking: "I want to reveal to you things that relate to the 'First Man, Adam and the Innocent Woman.'

I start by saying and reaffirming that if 'the sons of God' although few are still living on Earth, it is thanks to the love and loyalty of the 'Innocent Woman.' Repeat this to put it even more in evidence the gravest sin of the 'First Man,' created in the Image and Likeness of God the Father and established as 'Lord over the Earth,' was so filled with pride up to the point to believe to have the right to replace Him and to proceed without Him because of 'self-awareness.'



Imagine only a small part of all the gifts that God the Father bestowed and infused onto His 'Man created,' you must make a great mental effort that at the beginning will disturb you but then it will shine bright in your heart and in your mind and now you will make an extra mental effort to control your anger and your pain to learn about the plundering undergone on you and for which, you cannot even understand the whys and wherefores when Jesus spoke to His sons and brothers, defined them Gods.

Reflect on this, even with its Women besides him even before the Original Sin, accomplishes the continuation, the 'Project of God' in view of all the generations to follow that are Humanity? The 'First Couple,' since before, did not have the material and spiritual examples of which you take advantage with a legacy of millennia and millennia if not more because you will lose count of the years. You, to know and learn about anything you need to avail yourself of teachers, of books, testimony of every kind and in any field the study of computer science has helped you much. But the 'First Man and First Woman' by who have they learned? They had manifested the 'infused knowledge in every field.' Manifest, once adults. They did not need to ask because they already knew everything.

The Man and the Woman, as adults, were able to achieve anything their mind conceived and to their advantage they had a long lifeline to bring any project to completion. So, they and their children, and their children's children generation after generation, would constitute the marvelous Humanity to glorify God the Father, the Creator.

Think about this, turn your thinking, for example, to distinguished Scientist. You are well aware that even though you are physically alike, he is mentally superior. The comparison scares you, because you can barely remember what you have studied as a child while he is able to do extremely complicated calculations, to plan a trip into space. Now, this kind of man, imagine him in other fields of knowledge and practicality, for example in Medicine, in Sculpture, of Music and any other that comes to mind. Logic leads you to think and say, that every man is bright to do a specific job according to their own aptitudes and faculties. And yet, all men have a thinking brain to do calculations and all men have hands, to be able to do any form of art and more.

And in this last example, I bring you this daughter, Our Conchiglia; even you can take pen and paper and start to write what God tells your heart and mind. But enough with the examples, as of tomorrow resolve to do anything and in any area! Yes, it is a provocation, because none of you can do all things and, in all areas, even though you have examples of examples, books about books and testimony of witnesses of countless generations before you, but finite in their time.

Every man who is born must learn from those who were born before him. If you follow this logic, every man should know everything that billions and billions of men over the generations, from the 'First Man' have learned.

But no, you have never been as limited as in this generation, and the material and spiritual decay is horrible in the Eyes of God the Father. Can you at least in small part realize that the 'First Man' had every Gift, each feature and all wisdom and knowledge and that by the "sin of Hybridization" (by combining the genes of two different species or subspecies) has messed up the Man that you are today? Do you realize how you should have been, because it was the Will of the Father and how you are limited instead? Do you realize the why, Lucifer did not accept the Man as he was created by God and the fact that it had to be, Lucifer, second being of Light only to God to bow down and worship Man as created in the Image and Likeness of God in everything? The rebellion against God took place in the whole awareness both in Heaven with Lucifer and on Earth with the 'First Man' in the spiritual and material level, you are now 'their sub-product' enslaved, never to evolve and that since fifty million years.

Adam who was filled with arrogance and rebellion against God gave life and started the 'alien race' and not the other way around as self-proclaimed scholars speculate. The evil alien race, you call them devils. The alien races that love Me, you call them angels. You have considered and still consider them, superior beings to you, most advanced but instead, in the beginning, you are 'superior', 'pure children', before hybridization. Because of wars and resulting catastrophes once again Planet Earth had to start again and almost all memory lost, and those who were 'your younger siblings' preserving the Love for Me have evolved and will appear as your older siblings. On Planet Earth now cohabits 'good' alien beings (Angels) and 'evil' alien beings (Demons), the good ones to defend and protect Planet Earth from yourselves and the wicked ones to manipulate and destroy your habitat to conform it to their biological nature. Meanwhile they experiment on you, the good ones to improve your DNA, the wicked ones to study and figure out how to manipulate you better and thus destroy the body and the Soul and so finally take possession of Planet Earth, the most beautiful garden of the Universe.

It is time to break this 'satanic chain' but this chain has so many rings and each of you has a ring on hand. All together you have to decide to break the evil ring that you have in hand only like this will man regain his power, Gift of God, and still be able to start on the path traced by God and it is always the same, since the Beginning, namely the glorified Man in the Image and Likeness of God full of good physical and spiritual health and many years of life and no more death, cry or lament for the former things will have passed. Here, takes a deep breath, calm the heart and immediately start the True Life in God."

Adam and Cain, Experiments with Genetic Manipulation

Ref: Vol. 2 The Soul and Life of Adam and Cain – Ch 5:176

God the Father is speaking: "The wolf and the lamb shall forge means that the wolf will eat grass like the lamb. It also means that at the beginning of Creation all animals were peaceful and friends of man and fed on grass as I had established, in the perfection of what I had created.



The evil beings, descendants of Cain, have put in place many types of hybridization (to generate a new form of animal or plant by combining the genes of two different species or subspecies) on animals that they might kill each other and kill the men. Experiments and achievements have become disastrous and unfortunately are still carried out.

Know that man existed before the dinosaurs. These huge animals have not been created by Me but are the results of genetic manipulation exerted on harmless animals. The extent of these alien manipulations was to create ferocious animals to destroy 'men sons of God.'

*The first experiments, led to create by means of hybridization huge herbivorous dinosaurs but perfected only after the abomination (death of Abel) and so followed the carnivorous and exterminator dinosaurs. The same experiments were also performed on the birds, some became huge, and killers of other species **and men** (this resulted in the creation of Giant's that ranged between 8 and 12feet tall) and the same thing happened to the fish. Insects are not My Creation.*

What is repugnant comes not from Me anything that damages Man and Nature do not belong to me. Think about the little things in order to understand the big things. Some might say that birds feed on insects, and I tell you that they were established for the grain, the same which fed the birds that you hold in a cage. Some might say that it is natural that the big fish eats the small one and I tell you that for both the plankton was established.

How many of you have a dog that I have established as man's friend? Look at them; puppies are all alike, tender and affectionate. But if man makes sense and loves animals My creatures, does not train them to be ferocious that brings them to kill, yet trains them to be good company and to help man in many areas because he knows that animals are generous and faithful.

From Adam on, everything has been corrupted by those who have followed suit. Remember that 'Cain hybrid (children of the flesh) fruit of Adam,' was the first

to kill 'a Son of God, Abel.' And from then until now because of Original Sin the killers can no longer be counted.

Planet Earth is now invaded by hybrids spiritually vilest is soaked with the blood of billions upon billions of men."

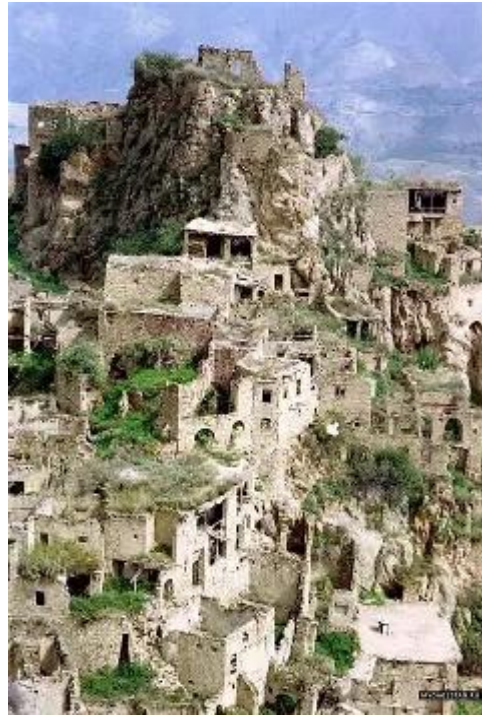
Prehistoric Animals that were not Created by God

Where did they come from? Adam and Cain experiments with genetic manipulation. Adam's descendants lost themselves in unbelief, for the sin to get out of hand. They didn't recognize the correlations and lived a purely earthly life.



Experiments and achievements have become disastrous and unfortunately are still carried out. The descendants of Cain have put in place many types of hybridization on animals that they might kill each other and kill man.

God the Father is speaking: "These animals did not come from me."



NOTE: There was extreme danger living during the **dinosaur period**, people had to live underground or mountain tops for protection. This video shows how 20,000 people built a small city underground to survive. Must watch – 24 minutes long

[Derinkuyu Wasn't Built to Hide — It Was Built Because the Surface Became Deadly](#)

Monsters were Destroyed- Destruction of the Moon- asteroids

Ref: Vol. 2 The Soul and Life of Adam and Cain – Ch 5:178

God the Father is speaking: "In the beginning of Creation, Planet Earth was completely still and did not rotate upon itself and also her 'true Moon' was still.

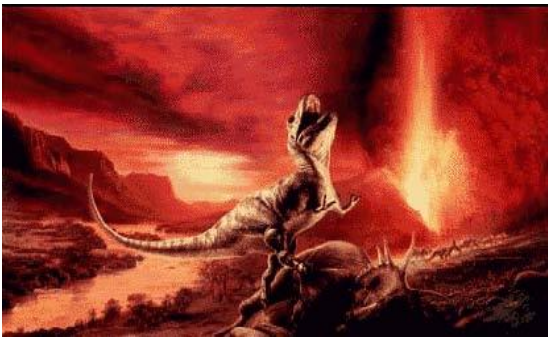
When Satan decided to appropriate the Earth through his servants **destroyed the 'true Moon' dispersed in many shattering asteroids**. They replaced the 'true Moon' with a 'new artificial moon' made it their base of operations, and from there through the magnetic energy induced a huge attraction *causing the inclination of the Earth and the consequent rotation*.

Can you imagine the scene, comparing the action of your hand on a top that from being still then starts spinning with all the negative consequences that resulted?

Nature is also controlled in the same way to slow down and keep at bay the food chain. Because of the 'night-darkness' Nature does not produce fruit and man is forced to work much and tire much to draw nourishment from the earth and hence survive in slave form.

They persist on your body because they are unable to intervene completely on your 'reason-brain' and 'feeling-heart-Soul' because they have not found the access key that I only know. For this reason, they modified your DNA...to take away many years of life.

The 'Star Wars' exists; asteroids are directed specifically to destroy, if it were not for the Celestial Militia led by Saint Michael the Archangel. Humanity on Earth would have become extinct long time ago unimaginable to you because the Earth is now under the yoke of Satan. Multitudes of men are under the yoke of Satan. Only the children of God are not spiritually subjected, however, they are physically and materially. They have a free spirit, but the chains of society penalize and pursue them. Humanity is not free because it has departed from Me. Scientist have discovered the fact that the powers are strongly concealed. Not only is the 'satellite moon' inhabited and used as a base of operations to and from the Earth, but other planets also."



Part 1 <https://youtu.be/kpLY0YwMACE>

Part 2 <https://youtu.be/5wvqvRfgD8w>

When Satan destroyed the "true Moon" it dispersed into many shattering asteroids that crashed into the earth and destroyed the dinosaurs and most of Hybridized Humanity as it was in the Project of God. Then there were lightning flashes, rumblings, and pearls of thunder, and great earthquakes that were so violent they dived the earth into many cotenants

Man Begins Again – advanced civilization

Ref: Keith M Hunter - <https://www.occultphysics.com/Great-Pyramid-of-Giza.html>

"Prior to recorded history many millennia ago there once existed an extremely advanced civilization on the face of the earth. Global in scale, it highly evolved in science and technology, and also spirituality.

As time passed though, due to corruption, war, and celestial catastrophe, this ancient civilization was all but wiped out. Only a remnant remained, mostly composed of the unlettered and the uncultured, as the ancient Greek philosopher Plato recorded. Civilization had thus to begin all over again."

Jesus is speaking: "Once the monsters were destroyed, Humanity was preserved and multiplied again from the lineage of Noah, judged just by God. Thus, it was returned to the first nature of the first man, still made of matter and spirit, and remained so even after sin had stripped the spirit of divine Grace and of its innocence." MV - Epistle of St. Paul to the Romans: 135 -141

Cain's Journey to the Sea

Ref: "The Household of God" by Jacob Lorber: Chapter 24

Jesus is speaking: . . . "And behold, Cain wept and departed with his wife and four children, two sons and two daughters, and after forty days came to the shores of the sea. Seeing the great expanse of water, he became frightened and thought in all earnest that he had come to the end of the world. 'If Enoch now followed me, whither could I flee?' he thought.

'Before me is the end of the world and to my left are high mountains where I am forbidden to go, and the Lord's gracious eye and ear are closed to me. Besides, I see here all kinds of strange and unblessed fruits; who would dare eat them? And the provisions we brought with us have now been consumed. Whatever shall I now do?

I will once more attempt to cry mightily to the Lord. Either He will hear me or let us perish. Then we will at least finally fare according to His will which in our great blindness we have certainly not recognized during all this long time.'

And behold, after a period of seventy-seven years Cain again began to pray to Me. He prayed for three days unceasingly day and night, crying all the time: 'Lord, You just and loving God, look graciously down upon Your greatest sinner and do to me according to Your holy will!' He kept repeating these words many thousands of times.

Since he was crying so mightily and miserably, I took pity on him and sent Abel to him in a flame of fire who spoke the following words to him as if coming from Me: 'Cain, rise from the ground and look at me and then tell me whether you still recognize me!'

Then Cain rose full of fear and looked at the flame, but did not recognize it, neither the voice nor the form and shaking with fear asked: 'Who are you strange being in this flame?'

And Abel answered: 'It is I, your brother Abel, in the flame of divine love before you. What do you wish to be done to you?' 'O brother,' said Cain, 'if it is you, behold I have no longer any will. My son Enoch has taken everything from me, also my will. Now I no longer have a will and, look, all of us here are now entirely without

a will. Therefore, I can only say: Let it be done to me and us all according to the holy will of the Lord!’

Then Abel said: ‘So listen! It is the will of the Lord, my Father and your God, that you eat of all the fruits you find here without fear. For the serpent has driven you to this place and has stayed at home with your children in the city of Enoch with all its venom and will have no more dealings with you. Once a person has relinquished his will there is no more to do for the evil brood, but he who has subjected his will to the serpent is its captive and the end of his free actions has come.

But to him who has escaped from its powerful fangs and thus has saved the last spark of his will and laid it down upon the earth before Jehovah, He will give a new will out of Himself that in the future he may work as His tool. Thus, it is the Lord's will for you too that in the future you act in accordance with His will. If ever the descendants of Enoch should find you and your people, they would not recognize you, ***for the love of the Lord will burn you permanently black.***

The name of 'Cain' will be taken from you, and you will be given another name, which is '**Ethiophe**', meaning 'the one without a will after the will of God.' Now you and your people must make a very large basket out of rattan and reed which must be seven man-heights long, three wide and one high, very strong and stopped with resin and pitch. Having completed this with great diligence, you must place it near the great waters and for forty days gather fruits, put them in the basket and, finally, get all in.

Then the Lord will send a great tide from the large waters. This will lift the basket with you in it and carry you to a distant land in the middle of these great waters where you will be completely safe from the persecution of Enoch.

In these great waters you will see small islands all around you, and when there have become too many of you on one island, proceed to the next one, and so on. Thus, you shall gradually, in accordance with the Lord's will, populate all the islands in the great expanse of water.

And if you do not forget the Lord, He will someday give you a large continent to inhabit where you will remain until the end of the world. ***But this will first have to be cleansed from the curse by floods which will rush down upon it choking and killing the descendants of Enoch and also many children of God who will allow themselves to be enticed by the beautiful daughters of Enoch.***

However, you who have no will of your own shall not be touched by the torrents of these floods because the will of the Lord has set you upon the waters of His great mercies. - And if there is anything you should need, you know anyway where to find the great Giver Who will not forsake you if you will not forsake Him within your hearts.

And now come closer, Cain. And behold, Cain stepped up to his flaming brother and Abel embraced him and he became jet-black, and his hair became curly like fur. And this was done to the other five, as well.

Then Abel said: ‘Now, brother **Ethiophe**, you are free from any guilt, which has remained at home with Enoch, and so act in accordance with the will of the Lord! Amen.’”

The Development of Cain's Line

Ref: "The Household of God" by Jacob Lorber: Chapter 25

Jesus is speaking: "And behold, Abel disappeared and Ethiope ate of the fruits, entirely happy for the first time in his life. And he did exactly as commanded.

Thus, the last branch of his line has right to the present time populated all the islands and following the great destruction of the serpent's brood by the floods from the heavens, also the large continents which you today call 'Africa', 'America' and 'Australia'. His line was not extinguished in the floods and is still the same in this last era as a testimony to the atrocities committed in the past and present time by My children and those of Enoch.

And so, this Ethiope is still today living naturally and spiritually as a constant observer of your actions, hidden on an island in the middle of the great waters, which no mortal will ever discover.

And he ate and drank all kinds of fruits and begat still 700 children during a thousand years. Thereafter he was renewed by Me and ate and drank no longer because he became filled forever with My love, which is the best food. For whoever is filled with that will not ever see, taste and experience death, and he will never hunger for food and thirst for a drink. His death will be a living departure from life to life into the life of the life of the living through the Living Who is I Myself.

Thus, Ethiope is still living physically as the first son of man in the wide face of the earth, able to watch the actions of all men and is, therefore, an ancient witness of all My deeds right to the present time.

He knew Noah, Abraham, Moses, all the prophets and Melchizedek, the high priest.

He witnessed My birth and My new creation through the greatest of all My works, the work of salvation. And so, he will remain until My Holy City has fully descended, which is now beginning to happen. Then he will be fully received there as a faithful gatekeeper for, except Me, nobody has such a thorough knowledge of the serpent as he has who has suffered through it so much.

This is the history of Cain, made known to you that you may ponder on yourselves and more easily and sooner recognize the roots of evil within you and destroy them completely so that you may then in My love find again the long lost Paradise and at last become true, faithful citizens of My new, great and holy City, just as I am your truest, holiest and best Father from all Eternities of eternities. Amen."

The World Became Highly Civilized Before the Flood

Ref: Vol. 2 The Soul and Life of Adam and Cain – Ch 8:323

People became civilized, but they were out of the presence of the Lord. Just because our nation is termed civilized, there is no sign that we are pleasing the Lord.

In the time before the flood, people-built cities but they forgot the God that made them. The descendants of Cain had cattle, riches, and farms, but they had no approval of God upon their lives. They were rich in goods, but they were barren and poor as far as God's power was concerned.

The evil beings, descendants of Cain, have put in place many types of hybridization (to generate a new form of animal or plant by combining the genes of two different species or subspecies) on animals that they might kill each other and

kill the men. Experiments and achievements have become disastrous and unfortunately are still carried out.

The descendants of Cain also invented many kinds of instruments. They had all kinds of music, but the Spirit of God was not in that music. They were artists in wood and stone. They were skillful with iron and brass, but they had failed God and cared nothing about serving Him.

The children of Cain followed in the footsteps of their father. They also became murderers. He had set the example before them, and they followed that example. The judgment of God multiplied ten times.

"And Lamech said unto his wives, Adah and Zillah, hear my voice; ye wives of Lamech, harken unto my speech: for I have slain a man to my wounding, and a young man to my hurt. If Cain shall be avenged seven-fold, truly Lamech seventy and seven-fold," Gen. 4:23-24.

We have come through some dark ages. Civilization has advanced in this generation, but people have departed from the faith, as Paul predicted that they would.

"Now the Spirit speaketh expressly, that in the latter times some shall depart from the faith, giving heed to seducing spirits, and doctrines of devils," I Tim. 4:1.

As people modernize their cities, houses, land, highways, and church houses, they also try to modernize the old-time religion. They tried to streamline their church services, but instead, they moved towards the darkness.

Men build cities but they forget Christ. We have more cattle, lands, property and money than ever before, but the men are dried up in their souls.

Men today have better musical instruments, very beautiful, polished, and expensive. They can play beautiful music on these instruments. This is wonderful if they would use those instruments for God and the church. As in the days before the flood, instead they use these instruments for the devil.

In the days before the flood man made his own religion to suit himself. In the days before the flood people strayed from the Lord. They prospered and made good wages. They had a high standard of living, but they were too busy to hear Noah preach the message of judgment. They thought the message of judgment was old and out of date. They were busy; but being so busy caused them to lose their souls. They were drunk on the cares of this world.

It is strange that people usually leave God when all is going well.

In our day people are prospering as never before. Men and women spend their lifetime eating and drinking, it seems that all they are living for is to fill their stomach.

All the time men are building more and more fine restaurants. They build more and more fine homes.

All the time people are working shorter hours. They are getting more and more of the luxuries of life. But instead of spending that leisure time reading the Bible, praying, or going to church. The average person spends their leisure time on themselves, to satisfy the lust of the flesh.

The places of amusement are full day and night. People are drunk on the pleasures of the world.

People today have time to travel and go on vacation. But they have no time for God. They would rather hear a man-made sermon, which has no warnings of judgment. They go to ball games, wrestling matches, carnivals, circuses, roadhouses, and nosedives of the devil, but they don't go to church. If they go to church, it is on Sunday morning for a few minutes to hear a sermon that tells them they are fine people.

Prosperity does not prove that a nation is religious. Prosperity makes many people forget God.

Violence increased in the earth in the days before the flood. The whole earth was filled with violence, Gen. 6:1. The people grew weaker and wiser. They were full of hatred, envy, lust, and pride.

The men forgot God and became as wicked as men could be. They robbed and killed until God had to do something, or the whole world would have been affected by this wickedness.

When a farmer sees that his orchard is being affected by the blight, he at once begins to prevent it from spreading to every tree in the orchard. When God saw that the whole earth was filled with violence, He immediately began to do something about it, before the corruption spread to all men of the earth.

In our day crime has increased as never before. It has increased several hundred percent in our generation. The world is coming about as it was in the days before the flood. We have millions of murder cases yet unsolved. Each second that goes by there is a major crime committed. The national news is filled with holdups, robberies, and murders. Look at the newspapers and you will see that prophecy is being fulfilled right before your eyes.

Morals reached a low before the flood. Men and women were filled with passion and pride. They married and gave in marriage. They were loose and low in morals. They were sex perverts. It reached a startling climax, until God had to do something about it. He had to destroy them and start over again.

Today supermen are popular. The children are taught to look for a superman who can do supernatural things. They are going to find one. People in general are looking for some man who can perform signs and wonders; one who will not tell them to stop their wicked ways. The stage is being set for that superman who can bring fire down from heaven. Jesus said He came in His Father's name, and they rejected Him; but another would come in his own name, him they would accept, John 5:43.

In the days before the flood the imagination of men's hearts was evil continually, Gen. 6:5. The devil took control of men's minds and hearts. He caused them to imagine almost everything. The devil actually took over men and possessed them. They were so taken up with evil spirits that God's Spirit ceased to deal with them anymore. God said, **"My Spirit shall not remain in man forever, since he is but flesh." Gen. 6:3.**

The devil had taken the people over completely. They sold out to Satan. It seemed that they had no more control over themselves.

Men went into apostasy before the flood. They had a satanic religion. They were controlled by the wrong spirit. It was because they refused to give up sin. They communed with evil spirits. They talked to the dead. They are not ashamed to come out in the open with it. Many of them do it now in the name of the church.

They claim to call up the dead relatives. It is not dead relatives (or familiar spirits) that they hear talking. It is demon voices.

They are being deceived. They are traveling a dangerous road. **"Some shall depart from the faith, giving heed to seducing spirits and doctrines of devils in the last days," I Tim. 4:1.**

Now there were religious people on earth before the flood, and don't forget it. We also have people today who are being led by the Spirit of God.

Enoch prophesied to the wicked of this day. He told us that Jesus was coming with thousands of His saints to recompense judgment on the ungodly sinners.

Well, we have a group of people today who are warning the world as Enoch did, that the Lord is coming with ten thousand of His saints. As it was in the days before the flood it is the same today. Some hear us and some don't.

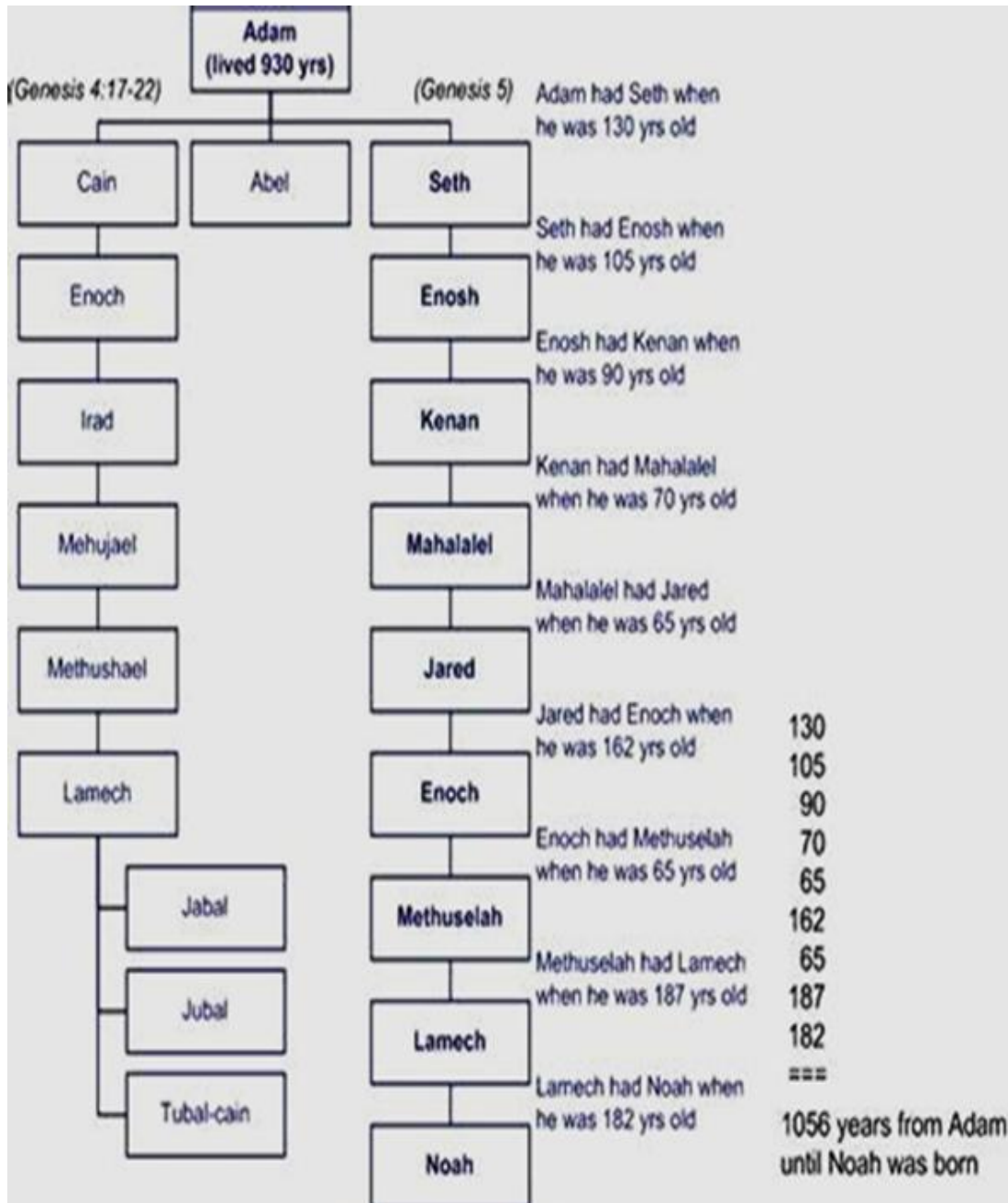
Adam's Descendants

Ref: Vol. 2 The Soul and Life of Adam and Cain – Ch 5:261

God the Father is speaking: "You are most certainly working according to My will when you distribute the spiritual knowledge which is conveyed to you from above; For it is important to provide clarification to many more people who genuinely want to receive it. Time and again I tell you that people have considerably diverted from the truth but that they hold on to their wrong thinking because even a correct clarification does not seem acceptable to them. ***However, it is the time of the end, and the length of time from the start of a period of Salvation until now is too long that evidence could be produced regarding the events which took place when the first human beings took possession of the earth.*** Yet even the first people themselves lacked a correct realization, since they were burdened by the original sin, from which they could have liberated themselves had they passed their test of will. They were spiritually still unenlightened and unaware of the correlations between the spiritual and the earthly kingdom, since due to Lucifer's temptation they changed their love when the pure spark of love from Me became clouded due to their fall into sin, otherwise it would have been impossible for people to descend ever further until the human race, Adam's descendants, lost itself in unbelief, for the sin to get out of hand. They didn't recognize the correlations and lived a purely earthly life. And although time and again beings of light embodied themselves on earth, too, in order to give people instructions and explain the purpose of existence to them their thinking nevertheless remained limited, and thus limited thinking was then also reproduced, the condition for profound wisdoms didn't exist, which includes My reign and activity throughout the whole of Creation. But neither did people's limited thinking allow for such clarifications relating to the broad scope of Creation, which can be noted on earth alone and which My might and wisdom, My love for all created beings always and forever animated with the apostatized spirits, which were to accomplish their return to Me on this said work of creation called Earth. And according to their narrow field of vision, they also only described the narrow region which they themselves occupied. And an account was given of the earthly process of development since Adam and Eve, the ancestral parents which, however, does not mean that the same happened in other places on earth, since these were still so far apart for the first human beings and partly separated by large

areas of water, that every territory was a world in itself where the once fallen spirits were able to mature and embody themselves in a human being.”

Adam's Descendants – chart



Lamech's Family – city of Enoch of Cain

Ref: Vol. 2 The Soul and Life of Adam and Cain – Ch 6:244



Jesus is speaking: "You can easily imagine that through a considerable emigration within one year the city of Enoch as well as the other ten cities became noticeably deserted. Furthermore, Lamech had lost his loyal followers and, as a result, his might, which he had considered to be so great, became as much as non-existent.

Bearing this in mind you will understand that Lamech for a period of about thirty years necessarily had to change his tone to a milder attitude in his government in order that the people would once more become submissive and begin to work for him so that at least he and his own could without a care gourmandize like a pig and a lazy oxen.

His family consisted of two wives, namely Ada ('well-advised virtue in joyfulness') and Zilla ('silent submission and patience'). Ada had two sons, namely, Jabal (father of the hut-dwellers at the foot of the mountains) and Jubal (musician, inventor of the Pan's pipe and the violin, an instrument which resembled yours, but it consisted of a single piece of wood which he had laboriously fashioned with the help of grinding and smoothing implements of stone).

Zilla had a son Thubalkain and his sister Naeme. I graciously allowed him to become a master in working metals, and Naeme tamed the wild animals and thereby enabled her brother and his helpers to enter the iron-rich mountains. She was exceedingly beautiful, had a very humble, but all the more courageous soul and her eyes possessed such a power that before her gaze stones became like wax and the hard teeth of the beasts soft like the down of a dove.

Behold, this was Lamech's family, plus a few servants he had retained, a few lady's-maids and some worthless concubines; in all about thirty people, all of whom had to work diligently in order to get something to eat and cover their nakedness. As already mentioned, this situation lasted about thirty years when the people, because of the good inventions rather than because of Lamech, began to visit the city of Enoch in order to buy their useful metal articles by way of barter. Also, from the other ten cities people came to hear Jubal's music, which softened their hearts and changed their attitude towards Lamech. Thus, Naeme's great beauty charmed the hearts, and the one who had not been able to see Naeme might weep and lament for days.

To help you understand how this could be possible, I will describe her appearance to you. This Naeme was the same person who, going back to the times of darkest heathendom, was known by the name of 'Venus', as the wife of a blacksmith and goddess of beauty. Since Sarah and Rachel there had never been such a beauty on earth as that of Naeme. She was five feet tall (according to your measurements). Her hair was blacker than coal, her forehead white like new snow, slightly pink towards the eyes. The eyes were large and sky-blue, the pupil fiery black, the eyelids fresh and tender, as were the dark eyebrows. The nose was straight and ended in a soft tip below which the nostrils gave it a sweet look through their gently rounded shape. The mouth was the size of an eye, and its gently raised lips silenced any rose. Her perfectly formed beautiful and serene cheeks had the slightest flush of the most tender red of roses, and they looked like snow-covered roses, where the snow, as it were, lets the last love-ray of this royal bloom shine through to its brilliantly white surface. Thus, her chin was incomparable to any other in an earthly shape. Her neck was neither too long nor too short, but just perfect, smooth and round and absolutely faultless. The beginning of her bosom distinguished itself from the neck only by a tenderly rounded elevation and the shoulders and the nape of the neck were all in perfect harmony. The bosom was like an ethereal, soft and white elevation of life rather than something of flesh on whose highest full and gentle roundness two bright young roses seemed to bud. Her arms were so rounded and soft that you would not be able to even imagine it, for such arms are found only in heaven. And in this perfect harmony all her body was covered with the shining white of snow in ethereal tenderness and softness.

This Naeme became the wife of her brother who begat with her seven sons who looked very heavy and shapeless and resembled your so-called idiots. This was caused by the fact that Naeme, at her father's will, had to allow herself to be used too often for purely unchaste reasons because of his tyranny, for thereby all the men became once more submissive to Lamech. Now all eyes were turned towards Naeme and all ears to the greedy commands of Lamech. For right to her eightieth year Naeme remained an object of human admiration, during which time the people had multiplied considerably and obeyed Lamech's commands. Seeing how mighty he had once more become, Lamech became increasingly severe and hard and cruelly reinstated the death penalty for those who resisted him. (28th August 1840)

At this particular time of Naeme, ***Adam's children, at My bidding, sent the first good emissary from the mountains to the lowlands of Enoch (the sons of heaven, the children of Seth)*** there to proclaim My name, and that, in particular at the court of Lamech. And behold, Lamech received the emissary well, who was a grandson of Adam descended from Adam's grandchildren before Seth. His name was Hored ('the terrible') and he was tall, wise and had neither wife nor children. When Lamech had taken Hored's teaching to heart, he honored this emissary by assembling all female members of his court and inviting Hored to choose the most beautiful woman. And so, against My will, Hored looked at the wife of Thubalkain, and she had to obey Lamech's command, this being a matter of life and death.

For although Naeme had at that time already reached an age of almost eighty she was still so beautiful that now a very attractive girl of eighteen would be no match for her. Besides, Thubalkain was used to unfaithfulness anyway, and so he did not take this event to heart, all the more so since Hored assured him that the

wild beasts would be unable to harm him because of the weapons and his metal Armor and, besides, Hored would provide for him some strong helpers from the mountains who would protect him and teach him the proper method of how to produce all kinds of useful things from metals.

This satisfied Thubalkain completely and thus this matter was ignominiously resolved. Hored departed from the city of Enoch and returned with his wife to the mountains.

However, as far as the helpers from on high were concerned, this promise was not kept as Hored did not return to his people with his wife, but had chosen a lonely spot where he could enjoy his happiness without being envied by anyone

Through this deception Thubalkain was compelled to persuade his brother Jabal, son of Ada, to join forces with him and erect foundries at the mountains and live there as a guard. Thus, he became the first known foundry man.

In this way they established regular metalworks and manufactured hundreds of objects, partly useful things, partly just ornaments and jewelry, which were avidly acquired in exchange for fruit. From all the cities and from all parts of the great land people traveled to the secure foundries where they bought articles they needed as well as luxury objects. They admired Thubalkain and brought their sons to him to be apprenticed, and thus within a short time the foundry population grew to such numbers that Lamech began to become anxious concerning them.

He thought: "What will, what shall I do? The crime I committed against my brothers is weighing down my heart. The great Terrible One from the mountains, who became my second son-in-law, has severely reproached me and made me tell the people about this crime. If I do that, my life will be in danger, and if I do not, I will have God and His great children in the mountains against me, who will destroy the disobedient one."

And behold, a powerful voice sounded from his breast: "Reveal it to your wives and tell them: You wives of Lamech, listen to my words and pay good attention to what I tell you. I have killed a man, which deed gave me a tumor, and a youth, which act wounded me. Cain shall be revenged seven times, but Lamech seventy-seven times!"

And behold, Lamech found this acceptable and soon did as bidden by the voice. But when his wives heard this, they had such a shock that they lost their speech and thus were unable to tell anyone about it. After a while they left him secretly to go to their sons in the foundries, but before they had reached them, they were stopped by two mountain dwellers, their speech was restored, and they were taken to the hallowed heights of the mountains.

As soon as they had arrived there, they asked about Naeme, but the guides told them that Hored had vanished out of disloyalty and jealousy, and they had not been shown where he was hiding like a worm. And if they wished to be blessed by them (the guides), they would take them for their wives. For Ada was one hundred and ten years old and Zilla only a hundred, and both were still extremely beautiful. Nowadays they would have been thought to be only in their twenty-fourth year.

*Thereupon they let themselves be blessed, became the guides' wives and traveled with their husbands to the abode of Adam, who was then **already nine hundred and twenty years old**, in order to receive his blessing, too.*

When Adam saw them, he spoke in a troubled voice: "Listen, you sons of the children of my children, I know all of my descendants who are within my blessing according to the blessing of Abel from eternal Love. But these two women I do not know! Where are they from?" And the two answered: "They are outlawed wives of Lamech whose crime has outlawed them."

And Adam said: "What are you saying? I know the son of Methuselah who is only one hundred and twenty-six years old and has never known a woman as yet! * So, what are you saying? Cursed be the lie and the mouth that has uttered it and the tongue, which speaks an untruth in the face of God! Therefore, by the curse of Cain, the murderer, tell me, where are these women from?"

"Do not be angry, Father Adam! Also, out of Cain a Lamech has come into existence in the lowland, and he has murdered two brothers. These wives were godly, notwithstanding the curse, and therefore the Lord has awakened us to save what was lost and if we did His will, do not be angry, father, but bless what the Lord has saved!"

And behold, Adam was moved and spoke: "What the Lord has saved is already blessed, and my blessing would in this case be a sin. So go in peace! How could I dislike what pleases God? Therefore, keep the treasures of eternal Love and Mercy! Amen." * N.B: of June 25, 1841: *"Here 126 years does not denote the age but only points to a state wherein man has not yet attained the proper ratio which is hundred for God, ten for the brother and fellowman and one for himself. If you know your arithmetic, work it out and you will know when a man is ready to be reborn. Lamech has not yet known a woman because in his spirit he has not as yet reached the stage set as a foundation of eternal order. Ans. W.H. (AnselmW. Huttenbrenner. The Publ.) is only one hundred and thirty-seven years old; there from the seven and the three some things have still to come off. This says I, your Father. Amen. Amen. Amen." - Methuselah was at that time two hundred and seventy-three years old and Lamech forty-six. Comp. Chap. 110, 7.- 'The Publ*

Begin and Cause of the Decline of the Children of the Heights

Ref: Vol. 2 The Soul and Life of Adam and Cain – Ch 6:248

Children of the Heights - The Sons of God and the daughters of Cain (Genesis 6:1-8) recounts the growing wickedness of humans, the existence of the Nephilim, God's decision to judge creation with a flood, and Noah's obedience in building the ark to preserve life.

Jesus is speaking: "And behold, thereupon they left the first patriarch and kept their treasures in their hearts. But they cared too much so that there remained only very little room for Me, which was, of course, not according to My order. Thus, their hearts became gradually dark, and they are increasingly sensual. The same happened to their children, and soon there was not much difference between them and the Enochites.

When Adam's children noticed how exceedingly beautiful these women were, they asked the two where they had come from.

They (the two guides, the Ed.) replied: "From the city of Enoch in the lowland; and there are still many thousands that have come from the blood of Cain. Go there and preach the name of the Lord and you shall receive such a reward, too. Hored went and was rewarded. We went, and the reward is tied to our hearts!" When they inquired after Hored, the two answered: "Brothers, our love has blinded us in its

blessed sweetness; therefore, we do not know where he has gone. But we assume that he has taken the road of Ahujel and Aza and you know that the sun has to rise and set eighty times before that place can be reached. However, you should not envy him in his happiness but do the will of Jehovah and go to the city of Enoch and powerfully proclaim His holy name. Then the reward will not be withheld from you."

There were seven of them who had heard this, and they went into the lowlands. - However, we shall first throw a glance into the depth of the city of Enoch before we await them there and allow them to appear and act there as unauthorized ones in My name out of temporal interests.

Behold, now Lamech had no one left to comfort him. Nothing would appeal to him. Music stirred his conscience; in the soft vibrations he kept hearing the last sighs of his murdered brothers and the sound of the pipe cut through his heart of stone. And he cursed Jubal for producing such miserable things, which at the sound of every note did not kill him only seventy-sevenfold, but always caused him a thousand-fold death. Because of this, which always mightily disturbed his conscience, Jubal had to leave the court and was not permitted to show his face there if he still valued his life.

Thus, Lamech's most beautiful mistresses, however attractive they might be, were unable to win any favors. Therefore, they tore their garments, wept and grieved. When Lamech saw this, he went to them and said: 'My Ada is gone and so is my Zilla. Of what use could you be to me? Go into the fields and work so that you may not starve at my court, for all I need now is myself! If I still possessed my might, then the sun, the moon and all the stars would have to submit to my anger. But since Tatahar I have become weak and am no longer able - notwithstanding the numerous executions, which were carried out in accordance with my just laws - to regain my lost power. Therefore, I want to get rid of everything and be left alone with my few servants, counselors and other workers and limit my government to my city only. Let all else be lawless and outlawed and whoever should approach my court shall be punished with death.

And now away with you that you may not be the first to experience this punishment and let none of you dare answer back if she does not want to see me cool my anger in her blood!'

Then he left them suddenly and the thirty maids of exquisite beauty, aged between twenty and forty, departed. Out in the open, they sat down and deliberated what they should do but were unable to come to a satisfactory decision. And look, while they were still deliberating, they suddenly noticed that seven tall, robust men whose unexpected appearance frightened them surrounded them. But when the men noticed their embarrassment, they spoke to them, as follows:

'Do not be afraid, you young and beautiful children, for you will not be harmed! We do not come from the city of Enoch to lead you to your death, but we come from the heights of the mountains and want to save you. If you will let us bless you, confessing the divine name of Jehovah, we shall take you for our dear wives in the love of God, the mightiest Father of our father Adam. Then you will have to follow us to the heights where Naeme has followed the great Hored and where in the protective arms of the brothers Ahlin and Jollie, Ada and Zilla, the former wives of Lamech, the cruel murderer of his brothers, have found safe refuge.'

Thereupon the maids rose and said: "There are thirty of us and you are only seven. If, as we have once heard, each of you may take only one wife, what should we, the other twenty-three, do by your side?"

And the seven said: 'It is not as you think! Although in the beginning, as we were taught by our still living original progenitor Adam, Jehovah's almighty love created only one man and one woman, we children have been allowed by God to take four, five and even more wives for the sake of begetting. Therefore, do not have misgivings, but let yourselves be blessed and follow us.'

And behold, when the maids heard this, they were very happy and followed the men. Having reached the heights, the seven did not know how to distribute these treasures of love among themselves. So, they prostrated themselves and implored Me for advice. - And lo, Seth approached and said: 'Rise and do not tempt God with perjured hearts, asking the Holy One how to distribute the impure catch among you, but go to Adam, repent there your mighty offence and then distribute the women among your brothers after the father Adam has blessed them, so that you may appear just before God, for you know that God is holy and that His land must not be desecrated through disobedience and the lewdness of your vain hearts.'

Upon such a reprimand the seven, together with the maids, followed Seth to the dwelling of Adam where they found him and Eve praying and sighing by the side of Enos (the preacher of My name), a son of Seth, and Enoch ('the will of Jehovah'), the extremely pious son of Jared. Seth told Adam what had happened and asked him to show mercy to the blood of Cain and thereby once more restore order, which had been disturbed by the seven.

And Adam said: 'O my dear son Abel-Seth, you are a true image of my godly Abel. You are, as he was, according to my heart, full of love. Abel blessed his murderer out of love, and you ask for blessing of the blood of my enemy!

Oh, be blessed a thousand-fold, you awakened seed of God and bless with this blessing the so deeply desecrated blood and distribute it to the children. And as it pleases the Lord, let each one take one of the maids, but only one. And he shall no longer remain in the land of Jehovah but go westward for thirty days and settle there in the deep valleys and not return to the here dwelling fathers before the sun has completed a hundred times the circle of its journey. For you, my dear Abel-Seth, know anyway how holy this place is where every mouth so often utters His holy name, where your sacrificial altar is standing, where Enos proclaims the holy will of the most high, holy Father and where Enoch fulfils that holy will to the last detail. Therefore, you shall act in the most holy name of Jehovah and in my name which is a holy name since I received it from God's most holy mouth as the first, unborn man created by His holy hand.

May love guide you and grace lead you forever! Amen.'

And behold, Enos and Enoch accompanied the father Seth from Adam's hut. And Eve wept for joy when she saw Adam so happy and said: 'Adam, how I always rejoice when you are really happy! But when I look back at myself, I become again sad when I realize the magnitude of my guilt and how much evil has gone forth from it. What must things be like with the descendants of Cain! O God, what a great sinner I am!'

But Adam comforted her, saying: 'Beloved wife, you my second self, your grief is always just and pleasing to the Lord. Therefore, let your heart be calm and

bear in mind that we can do nothing without God, whereas with God we can accomplish everything, as Enoch has taught us. Without God we can never find complete peace, and therefore we must sacrifice everything to the Lord. Behold, He is mighty, wise and full of love and shall find the right means to once more straighten out what we have spoilt. So be unconcerned; the Lord's love will set everything to rights in due course. Amen.'

And Eve thanked Adam and he blessed her for the last time in My name, and he lived still ten years (Adam was now 920 years old and when you add an additional 10 years, Adam will have died at 930 years as mentioned in the Scriptures. Eve lived an additional 20 years after Adam's death.)

Seth did as suggested by Adam, but the seven began to weep because they were going away. And Seth pitied them in his heart, and he prostrated himself and implored Me in his heart: 'O Jehovah, behold, the tears of these children are burning me, and yet my love is no more than hate compared with Your endless compassion! Show me through Your mouthpiece Enoch what I am to do or let me die like Abel that I may not see the tears of the children that are to be orphaned! O Jehovah, hear my prayers also this time as You always do! Amen.'

And behold, Enoch raised his eyes to heaven, and I opened his mouth and he began to speak, as follows: 'I have put My ear to the earth and have heard Seth's love. If the seven will give the maids to their thirty unmarried brothers and they live for ten years in chastity, they may stay. But if not, they must flee from My face as Adam bade them! Amen.'

Having heard this, the seven rejoiced in their hearts and praised God for His immense grace. And with great joy they took the maids to their brothers, accompanied by Seth, Enoch and Enos.

However, when the brothers saw the maids, they were alarmed at the situation and refused to accept them. But when I noticed the willingness of the seven, I spoke to them through the mouth of Enoch:

'I have seen the seven to possess unselfish hearts, happy to give joy to the brothers. Therefore, keep the maids and they shall be blessed for your hearts, four each, and the two eldest shall have five each. But the demanded chastity shall be observed! Amen.'

And behold, Seth, Enos and Enoch blessed them and left, praising My name, and then went and told Adam about it."

Needs and their evil.

Ref: Vol. 2 The Soul and Life of Adam and Cain – Ch 8:338

(The Lord) "Haven't you read about the former Eden of the Earth where the first human was created? This Eden was a large garden and was planted with the best fruits of the whole Earth; and yet the hand of a person could not possibly have worked it before this! Thus, the first people had no houses or towns; they had only extremely few needs which were easy to satisfy, but they remained healthy with it, always reached a ripe old age, and therefore had a lot of time to devote themselves to their inner education of the soul and remained almost always in a visible conjunction with the powers of heaven.

But through the inspiration of Satan a certain Cain built his son Hanoch a city of the same name; and thereby laid the foundation stone for all the evil things on Earth.

I tell you: Man needs very little for life on this Earth; but the haughtiness, the lethargy, the arrogance, the greed, and domineeringness of man need indescribably much and nonetheless can never be satisfied!

The worries of man are mostly fed on this, and people then quite naturally have no more time to concern themselves with what they should concern themselves because God placed them on this world for that reason only.

From Adam until Noah the children of the mountains never waged a war, because they had only very few needs and no-one wanted to be anything more than his brother, and the parents asserted themselves in the most respectable way before their children, because they always remained their children's teachers and advisors.

But in the lowlands, where the people who were blind in their hearts and their minds began to decorate their teachers and leaders and advisors with too much splendor, anointed their heads, decorated them with crowns and gave them all power and sway for the sake of appearance, there it was the end of life with few and small needs!

Splendor has a great stomach which can never be filled. The earth in a small surface area could no longer bring forth enough food out of the ground and the people of splendor, who were hard to satisfy, began to spread themselves out over the ground, called the occupied land their full property, ensured splendor on it and thereby awoke jealousy and envy and through this also resentment, quarrels, discord and war and the stronger in the end became entitled to the law and ruler over the weaker, forced them to work for him and to be subservient in all things. The rebellious were castigated and even threatened into unconditional obedience on pain of death!

And see, all that was the consequence of the external cultivation of the Earth, of the love of splendor and of the arrogance stemming from it!

But if I now, coming in My spirit from heaven, want to lead you back to the happy condition of the original man and show you the long-lost path to the Kingdom of God, how can you say that the conditions I set to become My disciples are too hard and too unfeasible in general!

I tell you: The yoke that I lay on your neck is soft, and the burden that I offer you to carry is as light as a feather in comparison with that which you carry day by day.

How far into the whole world reaches your worries! Day and night you have no rest and no repose; and that is all for the sake of the world and so that you will not be held back at the cost of the often-bloody sweating of your weak brothers and sisters!

With such worries, how should any time be found for the soul, to do anything for the awakening of the spirit of God in you?

Yes, your souls and the souls of millions of people no longer even know that they are the carriers of the spirit of God, not to mention that they could and should do something beneficial for becoming free and independent. For your love of splendor and comfortable life the poor and weak humanity is driven by you too strongly to bloody endless drudgery and therefore cannot do anything to liberate

their spirit and so you are dead along with you subordinates and are truly children of Satan and will not hear My word, which earnestly and truly leads you to life. Instead, you defend your word, from which eternal death for you and all your subordinates must necessarily follow!"

Origin of the Nephilim – warning of the Flood

Ref: Genesis 6:1-4, 5-8, 11,12

Ref: Vol. 2 The Soul and Life of Adam and Cain – Ch 8:321

Note: As we start this description of the Nephilim Man, it's important to note the distinction the Lord makes when He mentions "sons of heaven" - children of Seth are the children of God: the "daughters of man"- daughters of Cain are those of the flesh.

Jesus is speaking: **"Origin of the Nephilim:** When men began to multiply on earth and daughters were born to them, the sons of heaven saw how beautiful the daughters of man were, and so they took for their wives as many of them as they chose. Then the Lord said: 'My spirit shall not remain in man forever, since he is but flesh. His days shall comprise one hundred and twenty years.'



At that time the Nephilim appeared on earth (as well as later), after the sons of heaven had intercourse with the daughters of man, who bore them sons. They were the heroes of old, the men of renown.

Genesis 6:1-4:

[Note: The sacred author incorporates it here, not only in order to account for the prehistoric giants of Palestine, whom the Israelites called the Nephilim, but also to introduce the story of the flood with a moral orientation-the constantly increasing wickedness of mankind.

4,6. As well as later: According to Num13 when the Israelites invaded Palestine and found there the tall aboriginal Anakin, they likened them to the Nephilim; Dt2,10f. Perhaps the huge megalithic structures in Palestine were thought to have been built by a race of giants, whose superhuman strength was attributed to semi-divine origin. The heroes of old: the legendary worthies of ancient mythology.]

'Do you understand?' You are not the only one who does not understand. The learned and scientists do not understand, nor do believers or atheists. Pay attention to me. And start reading. 'When men began to multiply on earth and daughters were born to them, *the sons of heaven, O children of Seth*, saw how beautiful the daughters of man [daughters of Cain] were, and so they took for their wives as many of them as they chose ... At that time the Nephilim appeared on earth (as well as later), after sons of heaven had intercourse with the daughters of man, who bore them sons. They were the heroes of old, the men of renown.' The men who, because of the strength of their skeletons, impress your scientists, who deduce that at the beginning of the age, man was taller and stronger than he now is, and

from structure of their cranium they deduce that man derives from ape: The usual errors of men in the face of the mystery of creation.

You have not yet understood. I'll explain more clearly. If disobedience to God's order and its consequences were able to inject Evil into the innocent, with all its varied manifestations of lust, gluttony, wrath, envy, pride, and avarice, and this injection soon developed into fratricide (killing one's own brother), provoked by pride, wrath, envy, and avarice, what deeper decadence and deeper dominion by Satan must have been provoked by this second sin?

Adam and Eve had sinned against the first of God's commands for men. A command implied in the other one, obedience, given to the couple: 'Eat everything, but not from this tree.' Obedience is love. If they had obeyed without yielding to any pressure by Evil exerted upon their spirit, intellect, heart, and flesh, they would have loved God 'with all their heart, with all their soul, and with all their strength,' as was explicitly ordered by the Lord much later. They did not and were punished.

But they did not sin in the other branch of love - love for one's neighbor. They did not curse even Cain but wept over the one dead in the flesh and the one dead in spirit in equal measure, recognizing that the pain which God had permitted was just because they had created pain with their sin and had to be the first to experience it in all of its ramifications. They thus remained children of God, and, along with them, the descendants coming after this pain. Cain sinned against love for God and love for his neighbor. He violated love completely, and God cursed him, and Cain did not repent. He and his children were thus nothing, but children of the animal called man.

If the first sin of Adam made man degenerate to such a degree, what measure of decadence must have been produced by the second, to whom God's curse was joined? What must have been the source of sin in the heart of the animal-man and what power must they have reached after Cain had not only listened to the counsel of the Accursed One, but embraced him as his beloved master, killing as ordered by him? The descent of one branch, the one poisoned by satanic possession, knew no rest and took on a thousand faces. When Satan seizes, he corrupts in all ramifications. When Satan is king, the subject becomes a Satan. A Satan with all the unbridledness of Satan. A Satan going against divine and human law. A Satan violating even the most elementary and instinctive norms of life among men endowed with a soul and becoming brutish with the foulest sins of bestial man.

Wherever God is not present, Satan is. Wherever man no longer has a living soul, he is the beast-man. The beast loves the beast. Carnal lust, more than carnal because it is seized and sharpened by Satan makes him avid for all unions. What is horrid and disturbing, like a nightmare, strikes him as beautiful and seductive. What is licit does not satisfy him. It is too little and too honest. He is mad with lust for what is illicit, degrading, and bestial.

Those who were no longer children of God, because, with their father and like their father; they had fled God to accept Satan, ventured precisely into what is illicit, degrading, and bestial. *And they had monsters as sons and daughters. Those monsters, who now impress your scientists and lead them into error. Those monsters who, because of their powerful physique and savage beauty and ferocious boldness - result of union between Cain and the brutes-seduced the children of God - that is, the descendants of Seth through Enos, Cainan, Jared, Enoc of Jared (not to be confused with **Enoch of Cain** - Methuselah, Lamech, and Noah, the father of*

Shem, Ham, and Japheth. It was then that God, to keep the branch of the children of God from being entirely corrupted by the branch of the children of man - sent the universal deluge to extinguish men's lust under the weight of the waters and destroy the monsters begotten by lust of the godless, insatiable in sensuality because they were aroused by the fires of Satan.

And man, contemporary man, jabbars about semantic lines and zygomatic (relating to) angles and, in not wanting to admit a Creator, because he is too proud to acknowledge he has been made, he admits descent from the beast! In order to say to himself: 'By ourselves we evolved from animals into men.' He degrades himself, practices self-degradation, because he refuses to humble himself before God. And he is sinking. Oh, he is really sinking! In the times of the initial corruption his appearance was animal. Now his thought and heart are, and his soul, because of deeper and deeper union with evil, has taken on Satan's visage in too many cases."

The pre-Noah Earth - before the flood

Ref: Vol. 2 The Soul and Life of Adam and Cain – Ch 8:329

God the Father is speaking: "So that you can more easily understand its form and nature, it is necessary to imagine the mountain ranges of Asia, as well as those of Europe and Africa. As far as many of them are concerned, there is now not a trace left. At some time, they were washed away and ruptured by the withdrawal of the ocean. Their old connecting spines now lie under the river debris in valleys. Here and there, the existing rivers and larger rivers must force themselves through mountain bottlenecks. As far as the high mountain regions are concerned, their form - except very few - has changed so much through the effect of weathering that a person who lived a thousand years ago would not recognize these as the same - if endowed with his consciousness from that time, he were to be transferred back to the same an area in which he had lived 1000 years before, the place would be totally unfamiliar. You need only to look at the rocky debris of a river valley and observe the mass, which has been removed by the water from the region of the high mountains and has accumulated at the mouth of the river to a depth of about 2,500 feet and so to flow from the mouth of the river into an ocean, to see these changes. Then you will understand that the mountains two to three thousand years ago had a completely different shape than they do nowadays.

It was necessary to start with this, so that you can more easily understand the Pre-Noah situation of the mountains.

We will begin with northern Europe and move partially over to Asia, then into the southern parts of Europe and then finally to Africa.

From the mountain ranges, which go almost through the middle of Sweden and Norway, one major mountain range in the north went to the Ural Mountains and was joined with this range in an ascending direction. It had a foot width up to 100-200 German miles [460 to 920 of our miles. In 1860 one German mile was 7.4 km or 4.6 miles of today]. This mountain range was also joined to the present mountains of Denmark. This range today more or less separates the western plains of Europe from the mountainous parts of Germany (in Europe) into Switzerland. Thus, the Swiss mountain ranges were connected with the Urals and these, by way of Central Asia, with Tibet. This was an uninterrupted crest of mountains, whose

lower parts still had an elevation from 5,000 to 6,000 feet above sea level. However, they were not of an equally [consistent geophysical] solid makeup. Therefore, these mountains were ruptured through floods by the fall of central seas, an occurrence which will be described further below, and who at that time had no connection to the main ocean and swept away in different directions.

At that time, there were two main central seas.

The northern one filled the large basin which, started from today's Black Sea, was joined to the present Baltic over European Russia and all adjacent flat lands. It partially also incorporated the plains of the present-day European part of Turkey up to the so-called Iron Gates. If there were big storms, with its mountain-sized waves, it washed out bottlenecks up to Belgrade and Selin. This was the Northern central sea.

The Second Central Sea had no connection with the Northern central sea and now bears the name, the "Mediterranean Sea", was, like the Black Sea, unrelated to any world ocean. But its surface was not any less in size than the Black Sea or the Northern one. In the area of today's Fiume, a wide and long valley stretches into Croatia and, from there, with different branches the river of the Save, stretches up to Krajina and those regions beyond, where high mountains begin. On the other [western] side it covered the present kingdom of Venice, as well as Lombardy and some eastern parts of France, extended into Africa through the Nile valley up to the cataracts and covered the great sand desert [Sahara].

In fact, from Asia, a note-worthy high mountain range stretched to here and significant traces of it are still present today. This mountain range stretched from the north-eastern parts of Africa up to the high cataracts which are connected with the high mountains of Africa today. By a rather high mountain range the Straits of Gibraltar were connected with the Spain of today and thus formed the Second Central Sea which was comparable to the size of the Northern Central Sea. But it was generally many fathoms deeper than the North Middle Sea of which the Black Sea today is a remnant.

Now there was also a Third Central Sea. To investigate where this was located, you may take a look at those plains and valleys which are traversed today by the Danube, Drava and Mur, together with their tributaries. Of course, at that time this smaller Central Sea was known to no one, because Europe was not inhabited in prehistoric times. There was a large assortment of all kinds of animals, typically of giant form. In certain caves fossilized remains can be found today. Rocks and sands can also still produce fossilized remnants.

You must not think that this little Central Sea existed on its own. Especially in Europe, there were a number of significantly large lakes, which were connected with the Third Central Sea by existing outlets. The Carniola or its plains deep into Upper Carniola was a separate lake, of which today's 'Ljubljana Marsh' is a remainder. This was connected with the Second Central Sea through an outflow into the region of today's Rann. This Second Sea covered wide areas of Croatia.

One major part linked to the Third Central Sea extended over today's Drava valley into the area of the Fall dominion. In a different area the Drava River made its way through a long series of mountains to the region of today's settlement of Eis. There an important lake formed, of which Lake Werth [Wörthersee] is a remainder

today. One part of this lake stretched to the Drava Valley; to reach over to Villach and many smaller lakes were connected to it.

The Enns valley, we know today, was a lake of its own, which made its way through the so-called Gesa mountains and beyond. This was so, until it connected with a larger lake, which, after the Danube valley, covered all surfaces of Bavaria and, partially, the wide Inn Valley in Tirol. Like the Danube, the Mur was connected with the Third Central Sea.

A smaller lake filled today's Wildon, up to Guesting. Behind Guesting lay another lake, Mur Lake. This - covered the bottom and flattened side valleys, which in turn made smaller lakes and were connected with the main lake through small outlets. Today Switzerland has a large quantity of such little lakes some of which are remnants of that time.

With the above you have an adequate picture of the pre-flood arrangement of the mountains and bodies of water from this small part of the world. Now we want to look at Central Asia and the mountain range which separates Central Asia from South Asia. We can then consider the real cradle of the Adamite human race.

As was shown, one mountain range stretched from the Ural Mountains to Tibet, which was rutted at that time by a number of the most fertile valleys. The rivers coming from the mountains went through these valleys and gushed northward.

In Hanoch's time, the mountains were inhabited, in particular with the descendants of Seth while the followers of Hanoch spread out in the plains far beyond this mountain range. But as they saw that the mountain residents had more advantages than they did in their fertile and far extending flatlands, they began to taunt and persecute these mountain residents. In spite of the warnings to them, these persecutions did not cease but with the help of their explosive devices, forerunners of Chinese gunpowder, they began to literally destroy these mountains by drilling deep holes. In their blindness, they provided an outlet, not only for the large bodies of water, over whose ponds these mountains were situated, but also for those far distant areas covering Tibet, and in the wide stretches north, to the Urals. As a result, in the area of today's Caspian Sea, where Hanoch once stood, a great flooding took place, and the thrust of the water was so powerful that it reached a height between 7,000 and 8,000 feet above the other seas. The amount of water was further increased and sustained by a long period of rainfall over all of central Asia.

This unusually high level of water in all of central Asia was channeled into a powerful runoff through what today is the Volga valley. It raised the water level of this central sea by many fathoms and so everything was devastated especially in the area of the present Constantinople [Istanbul] as the not so firm isthmus was not in a position to be an obstacle for the rupture as extraordinary fire eruptions had formed earlier.

The fact that Noah with his ark found ground on a plateau of the Ararat proves how high the waters of Middle Asia had risen. The principal runoffs of most of the bodies of water in Middle Asia flowed to the North and East; however, a significant part of the runoff flowed to the South and West. Thus, the second large central sea was so overfilled that, partly because of its weight and mainly from fire eruptions under the earth, it made its way out into the Atlantic Ocean and in a few

hundred years ran off to an extent that all the fertile plains directly connected to it were drained - so that step by step especially the coastal areas could be populated starting from Asia.

For the most part this was done by the surviving peoples in the highlands in Asia and those from the Urals, which was a fertile and wide stretch of land to the northern sea. It was from there that the remaining part of northern Europe was populated. The Tauriscans also descended from these peoples, settling on the mountains of Styria and many other countries. They lived peacefully among each other until the acquisitiveness of the Greeks and Romans discovered them.

The isthmus, which connected Europe with Asia at the time of the Mesochristic flood, was also called the Isthmus of Deucalion. It was named after the patriarch who belonged to the mountain residents and was a type of prophet throughout Western Asia - he was called Deucalion, which means "one sent by God" or "I come from God". Thus, the great flood was called the Deucalion flood by the people who inhabited this part of South Asia. That was until, after several centuries, the descendants of Noah revealed the cause and course of events of the flood together with all the circumstances involved. Over the course of many years, Central Asia became a dry and desolate land which was uninhabitable. Only towards China and at the foot of the Tibetan Highlands was it fertile and habitable.

It is from these areas that the Mongols, Huns, Tatars, and Turkomans known to you originated. After the overpopulation of their lands, they were faced with having to migrate and partly turned to the East and some to the West. There they caused the local population's distress and embarrassment.

In the East, the old Sinites and the Medo-Hittites in Japan felt the power and might of the Mongols. In the West, especially the Huns and Tatars (later with the Turkomans) made themselves noticeable and caused the migrations well-known to you.

Nowadays, attempts have been made to create fertile oases in the desolate parts of Central Asia; but the knowledge needed to make such lands fertile is buried in pagan superstition- thus, this stretch of land will have to wait a long time before it can reach its pre-Noah fertility.

The mammoths, as well as other grass and leaf eating animals, resting under ice and snow, which are frequently found today, prove how fertile the lands were at that time, and this also includes Siberia. After the destruction of this fertile land, they could no longer nourish themselves and completely died out. Among these mammals are the giant deer, the giant sheep, the giant unicorn [horse], and more. Today, petrified remains are found in the Ural Mountains, the caves of Northern Tibet, and under the snow and ice of Siberia.

Here the question might be asked as to why the remains of human bodies are not found, especially in Siberia. The answer is, the human body is much more ethereal in all its parts and is created subject to decay from the very beginning (that is, as far as Adam's descendants are concerned).

As far as the pre-Adamic so-called "human animals" are concerned, petrified remains are found here and there. They occupy a position between the descendants of Cain and the apes currently found (Chimpanzees and Orang Utans).

Among all the animal species, they possessed the most instinctual intelligence and built their very primitive dwellings here and there. They supplied

the sections of brooks and rivers which were not too wide with rocks and built a type of bridge over these spots. If the water began to flow over such bridges - which was usually the case - they built a second bridge upstream. Often, they continued this work with the result of ten or more terraced bridges. In the long run, this was of little use, because the water began to swell rise and again overflowed over the bridges.

These walls of which we find traces today originated from people who had a short tail with heavy tuft of hair. These walls, especially those found in mountainous regions were built long before the times of Adam. But they are as little the work of free human reasoning as the purposeful little dwellings of the beavers in those waters, where these animals find a rich food supply.

There are other species of animals on earth that built and set up their dwellings in this way so that men who find them are astounded. But these dwellings are easily recognized as the work of animals, because they appear in the same type and form. The materials from which they are built can be analyzed by an experienced chemist. The building materials cannot be taken from nature, any more than the material from which the spider spins its web, the bee builds its cells, and the snail its shell. As it is with such animals, it is not much different with the pre-Adamites proper, which here and there can be found in the forests of Africa and America.

I think that I have shown you the Adamic form of the earth clearly and briefly, and you will have little more to ask about it.

I have only two final observations:

The first is that the present Danube channeled its way through the Iron Gates several hundred years later - human hands were needed to regulate the bed of the river so that this part was navigable for vessels. Where the Mur lakes have created obstacles, you can look at the hills lying around the Mur Boden and the Mur Boden itself and the detritus. This will tell you how these hills arose - along with this, the present third bank, formed by the river Mur. There you will easily find the remains of destroyed embankments.

In the ground around Graz, you will find fairly heavy boulders, but not at a great depth. They are mostly of a significant hardness. Downstream from Wildon the Mur is less harsh. Only here and there heavy rolled-off limestone can be found. Further, under Parkersburg to the outlet into the Drau you will find more sand than rolled off loose rocks. This is because the Mur had a wide bed and couldn't exert much pressure (its fall was too small).

If you go to Egypt, in the vicinity of the Cataract rapids, you'll find little rock debris; instead, you'll see larger quantities of red-brown and white sand. The cause is this: from the area of the cataracts to the Mediterranean Sea the gradient is very small (in regard to height). Other rivers have a stronger fall toward the ocean, with the exception of the Danube into the Black Sea, the Volga into the Caspian Sea and the Amazon into the Atlantic Ocean.

As far as an alleged flooding in America is concerned (dark sagas about this exist among natives), nothing can be said in the way of proof of general flooding there. At that time, the lowlands in this part of the world were underwater. Over time, this part of the world spread from north to south and was lifted by the volcanic fire eruptions above sea level - and the sea was forced to increasingly run off.

Along with this another great natural occurrence for this earth happened.

In this primeval time of the earth when, based on the law of sea migration, the greater part of the ocean was located towards the North, a continuous chain of islands stretched from the westernmost point of the coast of Africa to the Eastern corner of Brazil. In this way, it divided the Northern Sea of the Atlantic Ocean from the southern part. These two seas were connected by a number of straits of which the largest was hardly as wide as the Red Sea.

At that time, in which, because of the forces of fire under the earth, all parts of the world, especially the ocean floor, had to sustain great changes, the greater part of the islands mentioned sank, together with thousands of large and small islands, into the deep ocean floor. Through this wide opening the Northern Sea could then run off more easily into the Southern Sea. Many islands and lowlands emerged in the northern part of the earth, and thus also the lands of America.

On the other hand, the tip of Africa formally reaching far down towards the South Pole is still underwater. Also, a sort of hill is formed in the ocean under the foothills of the Cape of Good Hope, over which ships have trouble sailing, especially with heavy winds. They often must make a detour to reach the flat part of the Eastern Sea [Atlantic]. For steamships it is much easier now.

Here you have the great flood of America and that of many larger and smaller islands. But search no more, or I would have to lead you back into periods of primeval creation and many sea migrations. There you would experience nothing more useful than the old woman who couldn't understand how she got so many wrinkles and lines, even though she had lived a good and chaste life, whereas when she was 20, you couldn't locate a single wrinkle on her whole body.

Yes, all we can say is: "God, the Lord arranged all of that, so that the times change and, with all that surrounds us, we human beings change as well."

Thus, let us let the earth rest; in a thousand years it will look quite different! And so, we reach the end of the explanation I have given you so that you can more easily understand some other things from the Gospels and the writings of Moses. Amen!"

The Flood - Last days -

Ref: Vol. 2 The Soul and Life of Adam and Cain – Ch 8:334, Genesis 6:1-4, 5-8, 11,12



When the Lord saw how great man's wickedness on earth was, and how no desire that his heart conceived was ever anything but evil, he regretted that he had made man on the earth, and his heart was grieved.

So, the Lord said: "I will wipe out from the earth the men whom I have created, and not only whom I have created, and not only men, *but also the beast and the creeping things and the birds of the air*, for I am sorry that I made them." But Noah found favor with God.

In the eyes of God, the earth was corrupt and full of lawlessness. When God saw how corrupt the earth had become, since all mortals led depraved lives on earth, he said to Noah: "I have decided to put an end to all mortals on earth; the earth is full of lawlessness because of them. So, I will destroy them and all life on earth.

God the Father is speaking: "Shortly before the end it will be just like it was at the time of the Flood. People will have a great liking for all worldly pleasures, they will indulge their physical longings and vices, they will lead an immoral and unethical way of life and send no thought to the One above, who is Lord over heaven and earth, for they will have no more faith. The spiritual level will be the lowest ever since the beginning of this developmental period. Mocking and blaspheming they will confront the few believers with hostility, pursue them and deny them everything they need for living. They themselves, however, will feast and gorge themselves, they will live and love, but their love will be false and their way of life wrong, for the devil's servants will populate the earth in the last days, and the disintegration of earth will merely end a state which no longer allows people's higher development.

It will be a time of sinfulness which will go beyond all imagination. God will be completely displaced and those who believe in Him will be in danger of being killed. And God Himself will put an end to this period; the last day will arrive suddenly and unexpectedly amid the ecstasy of the world in which the people of the last days constantly live. Hence, prior to this an apparent progress will be noticeable, everything of a worldly nature will be offered to people, their demand for worldly things will be extreme and everyone will unscrupulously grant himself whatever his mind desires; the strong will fight the weak and the winner will be the one who heartlessly acquires what he doesn't deserve, because he is supported by Satan himself who bestows material favors on him and incites him to increased enjoyment of life.

Sin will escalate to an alarming extent and Judgment will come to pass when no-one expects it. For once people have reached this level of development, they will have to be devoured by the earth, as they will have become true servants of the devil and completely deny God. And then the hour of accountability will come to all sinners, the day of God's Justice will arrive, the Day of Judgment will come to all who belong to God's adversary and the day of Recompense for the few who are faithful to God, who persevere and don't fall prey to the temptations of the world, as it is proclaimed in Word and Scripture. A salvation period will come to an end because humanity will be ready for its downfall."

The Great Flood

Ref: Vol. 2 The Soul and Life of Adam and Cain – Ch 8:336, Gen7:11-13, 17-23



The flood continued upon the earth for forty days. As the waters increased, they lifted the ark, so that it rose above the earth. The swelling waters increased greatly, but the ark floated on the surface of the waters. Higher and higher above the earth rose the waters, until all the highest mountains everywhere were submerged, the crest rising fifteen cubits higher than the submerged mountains. All creatures that stirred on the earth perished: birds, cattle, wild animals, and all that swarmed on the earth, as well as all mankind. Everything on dry land with the faintest breath of life in its nostrils died out. The Lord wiped out everything living thing on earth: man and cattle, the creeping things and the birds of the air; all were wiped out from the earth. Only Noah and those with him in the ark were left.

The waters maintained their crest over the earth for one hundred and fifty days, and then God remembered Noah and all the animals, wild and tame, that were with him in the ark. So God made a wind sweep over the earth, and the waters began to subside. The fountain of the abyss and the floodgates of the sky were closed, and the downpour from the sky was held back. Gradually the waters receded from the earth. At the end of one hundred and fifty days, the waters had so diminished that, in the seventh month, on the seventeenth day of the month, the ark came to rest on the mountains of Ararat.

The Great Flood- Comments

Ref: Vol. 2 The Soul and Life of Adam and Cain – Ch 8:337

“But for the day and the exact hour, nobody knows them, not even the angels of the Lord, only the Father knows them. As it was in the days of Noah, so it will be when the Son of Man comes. In the days before the Flood, men were eating, drinking, taking wives, taking husbands, without worrying about the sign, right up to the day Noah went into the ark and the cataracts of heaven were opened and the Flood swept all living beings and things away. It will be like this also for the coming of the Son of Man.”

In this passage Jesus uses the title **Son of Man** when He is speaking to the Jews because in Daniel 7:13,14 it refers to the **Son of Man** as the coming of the Messiah. In essence, Jesus is telling the Jews, that He is the Messiah.

“Man” in capitals refers to the sons of heaven who reflect God’s law and love within themselves while “man” in small letters refers to men of the flesh – godless and worldly [they]. They (the godless) are the ones who are referred to in the verse: **In those days before the flood, they were eating and drinking, marrying and giving in marriage, up to the day that Noah (the sons of heaven) entered the ark.** They, who represent the godless, were too busy with the ways of the world to pay attention to the warnings of Noah. **They did not know until the flood came and carried them all away. So will it be also at the coming of the Son of Man.**

It’s important to note that although no one will know the exact day or hour for the Son of Man’s return, God prepares His people well in advance of any pending chastisement. The Lord uses the time of Noah as an example of how God found favor with Noah and his family who were instructed by God to build an ark because of the pending flood that would wipeout mankind. His people (the sons of heaven) were prepared, and they were the ones to enter the ark. The others (sons of the flesh) who did not listen to Noah, over the one-hundred years it took to build the ark, did not repent and change their ways. They were not prepared when the flood came. After the ark was complete, Noah was told by God, seven days in advance, of the pending flood that was about to take place. (Gen 7:4) The Lord will prepare His people well in advance of His return. Stay awake!

Noah was six hundred years old when the flood waters came upon the earth. All of mankind perished, except for Noah, his family, (8 in all) and the animals in the ark. This massive upheaval would tear apart and bury forever the pre-flood world, which would wipe out all traces of the Garden of Eden.

Noah was in the ark for almost a year. (Genesis 8:14). The Bible clearly teaches that all flesh died, every man (Genesis 7:21). Genesis 9:1 confirms that only Noah and his family were saved. The world’s entire population of air-breathing, land-animals died, except for those that were taken into the ark. After the flood waters had been going down for 4 months, the dove could still not find suitable ground to nest in (Geneses 8:9).

“Jesus is speaking: “Although it says in the Old Testament: ‘Covering all the mountains of the earth and apart from that borne in the ark, nothing alive was left on the earth’, this should not be taken literally as referring to the physical earth, for ‘mountains’ merely means the pride and lust for power shown by men. And that nothing alive was left on the earth except that in the ark means that only Noah most faithfully maintained a spiritual life in God and out of God.” (Ha III 357 and 358)

God destroyed the world that existed at that time because of man’s wickedness. When we look at nature, with its testimonies to the flood, we are viewing the consequences of sin and the acceptance of the Beast. It is also a reminder that God will save those who have faith in Him. God promised that He would never again destroy the world with water, but that a future judgment would take place.

For over a hundred years, Noah pleaded with the people of his day to have faith in God. They would not listen and the door to the ark was closed by God himself.

Jesus is speaking: "There perished in the flood of the corrupt branches of humanity groping in the darkness consequent to the fall, darkness in which only for the few just ones, as through heavy fogs, there reached once again a sole ray of the lost star; the memory of God and His promise." MV - Epistle of St. Paul to the Romans: 135 -141

"I will establish my covenant with you, that never again shall all bodily creatures be destroyed by the waters of a flood; there shall not be another flood to devastate the earth."

Ref: Gen 9: 11

<https://youtu.be/6thNkjGqxeY>



Revelation of the Flood

Ref: Vol. 2 The Soul and Life of Adam and Cain – Ch 8:340

God the Father is speaking: "***The Flood did not cover the 'whole' earth, as it says in the Old Testament, but according to New Revelation specifically 'Central Asia, with the Aral and the Caspian Sea remaining to this day as memorable left overs for the area covered by the Caspian Sea today was once the over-great and proud Hanoch empire.*** From this principal region the waters poured into both Siberia and also Europe, though the latter was not inhabited at the time; parts broke to the south, where the East Indies are today, and most of all over Arabia. Northern Africa was also seriously affected, as far as the high land (Ethiopia), where the flooding was only minor. America was only involved to a small extent in the north, from Siberia; the south remained quite free, as did most of the islands in the great ocean" (the Pacific). ***"Although it says in the Old Testament: 'Covering all the mountains of the earth and apart from that borne in the ark, nothing alive was left on the earth', this should not be taken literally as referring to the physical earth, for 'mountains' merely means the pride and lust for power shown by men. And that nothing alive was left on the earth except that in the ark means that only Noah most faithfully maintained a spiritual life in God and out of God."*** (Ha III 357 and 358)

The Reason for the Flood.

Ref: Vol. 2 The Soul and Life of Adam and Cain – Ch 8:340

(The Lord) "They even accuse God and say: How could God let a flood come over the Earth to drown all life and how could He destroy the Sodomites and the Gomarite's!?" Oh, nothing easier than that! For why let bustling and prim lumps of flesh crawl around the earth any longer, whose souls have strayed so far from the old order of God that even the last trace of self-awareness in them is gone out of pure concern for the flesh?

Can there be an even thicker incarnation of the human soul than that in which the soul has not only come into being from the divine spirit in its every representation but which also in the end loses itself so much that it begins to deny its own being quite seriously and can no longer be convinced that it exists?

Yes, when that situation occurs with the people of the world then man has completely stopped being human; he is then only an instinctively reasoning animal and above all incapable of any further education of the soul and the spirit. Thus, such a body must be killed and decay along with the too intensively incarnated soul, so that maybe after many millennia a soul which has become free of all incarnation can enter the path to its self-education and independence, either on this Earth or on another.

That there are here, however, often people who no longer know anything about their own soul for pure concern about the world and their flesh, you can recognize partly in yourself, partly in the Sadducees and to a great part in all people; for no-one knows any longer who and what the soul is! One talks about it and says, "with heart and soul" and "he is my soul mate"; but if you ask someone "Friend, who and what is the soul?" The person questioned stands there like an ox on a mountainside not knowing what to say!

But once a soul does not recognize itself any longer and in the end even quite forgets what and how it is, then everything ends! And there is nothing left for God to do except the old process of destroying the people physically again on the face of the Earth, sometimes to a large degree, sometimes to a lesser degree, depending on the situation of the people whether they still know something about their soul and spirit or nothing at all.

Such pure worldly and fleshly people may look very beautiful and sumptuous, particularly the female sex; the easily understandable reason lies in the constant greater conjunction of the soul with the body. But such people also become weak through this and are very susceptible to all serious physical effects. Their bodies become sick easily and the slightest wind of a plague brings inevitable death, while people who have a free soul and a free spirit in it can let all the poisons of the Earth come over them and it will not harm them in the least; for a free soul and the freest spirit in it have power and means in abundance to face every enemy in the most effective way, while a soul gagged everywhere by its cursed flesh resembles a small tied-up giant who in the end cannot even defend himself against a fly and has to allow an insensible dwarf with a knife to slowly but painfully remove his head from his body."

Jesus is speaking: "Once the monsters were destroyed, Humanity was preserved and multiplied again from the lineage of Noah, judged just by God. Thus, it was returned to the first nature of the first man, still made of matter and spirit, and remained so even after sin had stripped the spirit of divine Grace and of its innocence." MV - Epistle of St. Paul to the Romans: 135 -141

Noah and the Ark.

Ref: Vol. 2 The Soul and Life of Adam and Cain – Ch 8:342

Jesus is speaking: "After this speech everyone opens wide their eyes and says to themselves: I am guilty! And at this the young Pharisee does not know what he

should say to Me. Also, Cyrenius and Julius now make rather thoughtful faces and even Ebahl and Jarah begin to think about their female beauty!

And Cyrenius says after a moment of deep consideration: "Lord and Master, I have spent some days and nights with you here and there and have seen many wonders performed by you and heard you speak clearly, but nothing has made me think as much as this speech! For according to your remarks now we are not at all in a better position than Sodom and Gomorrah in the days of Abraham. And all our cares, actions and dealings are quite in optima forma for Satan. Friend, that is a very hard lecture! Unfortunately for no price one cannot conceal that You have given us the bare truth here; but how can we now take the standpoint from where we can willingly turn our backs on the world and then turn to the cultivation of the soul and the spirit for all time?"

I say, "Friend, nothing easier than this! You remain what and who you are, and stand before whom you have been placed before, but not for your reputation, but instead for the various uses to other people!

For see, when the flood came in the days of Noah over the face of the Earth, which basically was inhabited by spoilt people, the flood killed everything in the world except for Noah and his family and the animals which Noah took in cages, all but the fish in the water, of course.

But how did Noah and his family remain alive high above the death-bringing water of the great flood? You see, he was in a secure tub which the great flood had to carry obediently on its back and could never penetrate into inside of the boat, where it could have become dangerous to the life of Noah!

This deadly flood of Noah's continues to spiritually cover the face of this Earth; and I say to you that this spiritual and continual flood of Noah's is no less dangerous for the lives of the people of this world than the former natural flood in the days of Noah.

But how can one protect oneself from drowning in the spiritual flood? I say to you: What Noah did physically, that you should do spiritually, and then one is protected forever from drowning in the great and continual spiritual flood!

In other words: Give the world what is of the world according to God's order - but give above all God what is God's!

"Noah's Ark" is the correct humility and love of a person towards one's neighbor and towards God.

Whoever is very humble and full of the pure, unselfish love towards God the Father and towards all people and always actively strives to serve other people as far as possible in the order of God, he floats away quite safely and protected over the flood of world sins that otherwise easily brings death; and at the end of this earthly path of life, when the flood subsides for him and runs away into its dark depths, there his ark will find welcome rest on the great Ararat of the most living Kingdom of God and will become an eternal house for those whom it carries."



Building the Ark

Ref: Vol. 2 The Soul and Life of Adam and Cain – Ch 8:344

Jess is speaking: "When Noah built the ark, he is supposed to have begun his commanded work very dilatorily in the beginning. When his adversaries noticed this, they constantly destroyed by night what he had built during the day. After many years did he begin to work on the ark day and night and placed guards there; only then did the construction proceed towards its



completion with swift steps and offered protection in the time of the flood, as we know, to those who were inside and kept them from an otherwise certain demise.

I tell you that we are basically all Noah's. The world with its lies and deceptions and all the temptations that come from this are the perpetual flood. In order not to be consumed we must most diligently build the commanded ark; this ark is the consolidation of the life of our soul for the maintenance and **final complete education of the life of the spirit of God in the soul.**

When the flood of enticing world temptations then finally sinks into the depths of emptiness, the life of God will come out in all strength in and around the soul and will begin a new work in the pure and new sphere of life in the most unrestricted freedom without any hostile highwayman and thereby bless through and with God the whole infinity from eternity to eternity! Do you understand this image?"

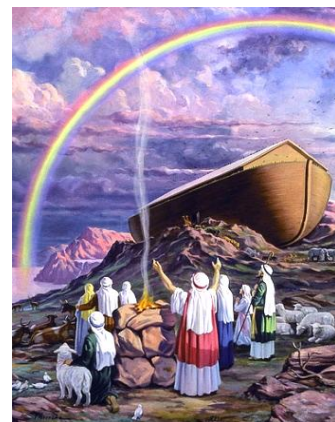
The Ark of Noah

Ref: Vol. 2 The Soul and Life of Adam and Cain – Ch 8:344

Jesus is speaking: "The ark of Noah did not save all men but those amongst whom God found to be just in His presence.

I will set my rainbow amongst the clouds ... and I will remember my covenant.

Even in the present hour, an hour that rises and which has to pass, and the more it advances, the more it shall be darkened by the storm clouds, the Ark of God will not be able to save all men, but because men, many men, will not want to be saved by finding salvation by means of the Ark of God.



The rainbow after the flood was seen only by the few just ones who had remained alive on Earth. In the present hour instead, Mary, the rainbow, the sign of peace for a super abounding of mercy, will be seen by many who are not just. Her voice, Her perfume and Her prodigies will be noticed by the just and by sinners, and blessed those amongst these last ones who, as for the Rainbow of God the wrath of God is not unleashed, so too, to justice, to faith in Jesus in whom is salvation, will they turn?"

Did the Nephilim reappear after the flood?



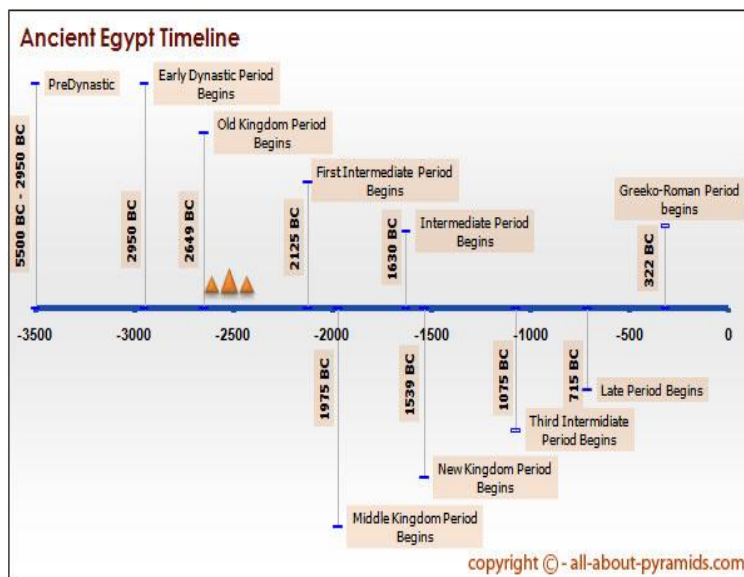
The Lord has already explained that the reasons God destroyed *specifically "Central Asia, with the Aral and the Caspian Sea"* was because of these Nephilim, their offspring, and also the wickedness of that generation except eight people in Noah's family and the animals and birds in the Ark. However, in Numbers 13:33 the Nephilim reappeared and Israel is terrified of them. So, my Question is, how did the descendants of the Nephilim reappear on the earth if the flood had wiped out the wickedness of the evil generation of man from the earth?

To answer these questions, the Lord will now reveal the mysteries about the ancient land of Egypt, the Moors – descendants of Cain, who were the Giants, and why was Isriel so terrified of these Giants and where did they come from? Perhaps these Giants are different from the Nephilim Giants!

To help solve these mysteries, the Lord will start with the mysteries of the Great Egyptian Dynasty: Let's begin:



The Mysteries of the Great Egyptian Dynasty



The People of Abyssinia and Nubia

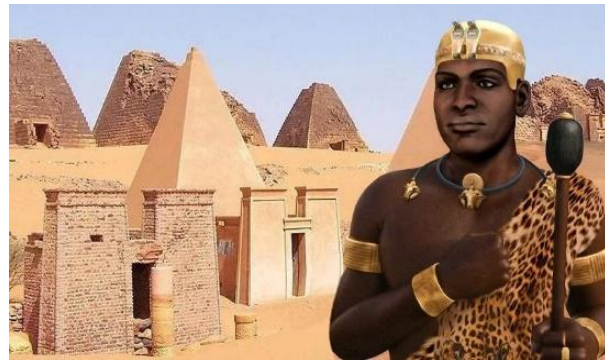
Ref: "The Great Gospel of John" Vol.4: Ch 179 by Jakob Lorber

Jesus is speaking: "Most of you are familiar, at least in legend, with the famous ancient land of the Egyptians.

Behind the great waterfalls on the Nile there is a very large, fertile mountain land called Habi ie sin (the Son of Habi). This Habi is a descendant of Cain and not of Noah; these highlands, like many other countries on the earth, were spared the ravages of the Great Flood during the time of Noah.



The son of this Habi was, like Nimrod, a mighty hunter. He invented the club and the bow, and all animals, no matter how aggressive, fierce, and wild they might be, gave him a wide berth as he was a giant. His voice caused rocks to tremble, and he smashed them to pieces with his mighty club, while, with his bow, he shot ten-pound arrows over a thousand paces. Whatever he aimed at, he hit with confidence and made it his prey.



At the same time, as he had mastered all the animals, all his weaker brothers and sisters obeyed him. He was very serious, never cruel towards people, not even hard, but his orders had to be obeyed.

He believed in a far-off, all-powerful God, who originally created everything. But this God has countless exceedingly powerful servants and henchmen, both visible and invisible. Some of them ruled over the sun, the moon and all the stars, some ruled over the earth, some over water, some over fire and so forth, some over the grass, trees and thickets, some over the waters on and in the earth, some over metals, some over the birds in the air, some over all the animals in the water and some over all the animals which walk or creep on earth.

These invisible servants and often the visible henchmen had to be held in high esteem by mortal people, who were obliged strictly to obey and comply with the laws which were from time to time handed down to them. They always punished disobedience most severely by means of all kinds of cataclysms with which they plagued the dissidents who were lacking in respect for them or did not follow their laws or even those who were just unfriendly to each other.

In a word, this son of Habi was the first ruler of this ancient little nation and at the same time the first priest, whose contribution was a very deficient concept of God and the other spiritual beings. In his lineage he was the sixth descendent of Cain and the seventh of Adam.

He taught the people to get to know how to handle the tame animals and how to bring them into their households and was therefore the founder of a colony of shepherds. He also taught them how to use some fruit as food, and how to grow, maintain and improve them in their gardens, as well as instructing them how to build huts using rocks, palms, and clay to create a safe home.

He himself cleansed the whole of that large country of ravenous, wild beasts. The equally powerful giants who were his sons reaped the benefit which arose from the tireless efforts of their powerful father. During the course of a few hundred years this black-skinned little nation became a large and mighty people with good customs and quite effective government, much cleverer and better than the Egyptian one under its first ruling shepherds (the pharaohs).

However, this rather happy nation blocked all possible entrances, so that even the foreign wild animals found it almost impossible to gain access or cause harm to the rich herds of this large country, which had expanded in all directions, and which was five times the size of the Promised Land. For the same reason, until now no foreign invader has been able to reach its green pastures, even though the country has expanded far beyond its old borders. The borders of the newly occupied territories were also sealed off by this nation as they were annexed, so that it was not easy for any enemy to invade them.

They have one single access road to Egypt and that is located at the foot of the Kamarhati Mountains where the lower slopes are very rugged. It is an extremely narrow pass which ends, after a four hour walk mainly underground through deceptive twists and turns, in the uppermost region of Egypt and finally passes through a very narrow cave, - an exit which was only found during the times of Moses, by citizens who were fugitives accused of high treason and were fleeing their fearful punishments. When they were pursued, they fled into a hole in the rocks to hide. After they had progressed about five hundred paces inside the cave, armed only with bows and arrows, they discovered daylight at the opposite end and ran towards it. They soon came out and were very happy to have escaped their pursuers. Having reached an open country, the like of which they had never seen before, they closed off the cave exit with rocks, so that it would not be possible for their pursuers ever to enter this spacious, beautiful, free land.

The number of fugitives was seventy heads in total, thirty-six men and thirty-four women. One of the extra men did not have a wife so they chose him to be the leader because he was the most experienced. The last one was still too young to have a wife and was therefore chosen to be the leader's servant.

The fugitives lived on this land for about a year and a half. However, they were not able to succeed in cleaning up the area, even though they spent most of their time hunting fierce wild animals. After the end of that time, they left and followed the Nile as it flowed northwards and after a few weeks they reached the Cataracts which, seen from the Egyptian side, are regarded as the second series. There they met great difficulties and major obstacles to progress.

They would certainly have moved more quickly on the right bank of the Nile, but they were on the left shore, where there are many clefts in the rocks as well as no shortage of all kinds of animals which are not very friendly to people. As the barriers to their forward progress were unending, they had made the decision to return to their former settlement when a large herd of cattle and sheep came up

behind them also heading north, which led them to believe that their pursuers had tracked them down. They therefore pressed on as quickly as possible and after a tiresome day's travel they finally reached a beautiful expanse of exceedingly fertile land.

There was an abundance of dates and figs, as well as large flocks of sheep and herds of cattle which moved around as they grazed completely without supervision. However, those herds which had forced our community of black people to move on, were lost in the rapids of the cataracts and did not follow them any longer. This greatly pleased our travelers as they then believed that their supposed pursuers were no longer following them.

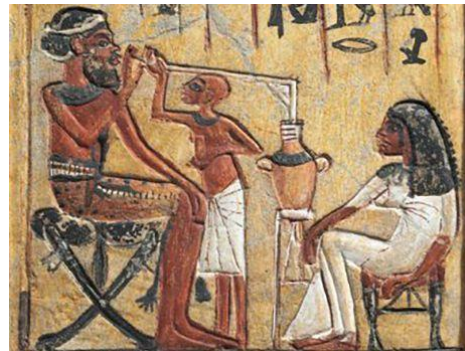
In this new land the community sought out the best place to live, fortified it and settled down. It was a beautiful, smooth hill on the banks of the Nile plentifully supplied with dates, figs, and beautiful palms and apart from a few monkeys there was no trace of any aggressive wild animals.

In this place these people multiplied and within a few hundred years had grown into a sizeable nation, which took over all the free herds, built huts and even villages and lived quite well. They all, however, retained the beliefs and all the customs and uses which the son of Habi had introduced.

This large, at that time very beautiful and fertile land was called by the black inhabitants 'Noua Bia' (Nubia) which translated means 'New Dwelling'.

In time this nation also became acquainted with the Egyptians, a nation which at a later date made great efforts to subjugate this first black community, an enterprise in which they did not however wholly succeed. They were also the first completely black people which the Egyptians came to see.

In the beginning the Egyptians regarded these people as large apes and it was only after they discovered that they spoke a language akin to their own, that they began to regard them as real people and bought cattle and sheep from them. In return the black community learned all kind of arts and sciences from the Egyptians which they were able to turn to good use, especially those in the field of metal working of which they had until then no previous knowledge.



In that community the old religion and all the old customs and habits which they took over from the son of Habi, have survived to this day.

This year a seer emerged among these people and revealed to his brothers and sisters an extraordinary vision, which he has experienced seven times in succession. He described to them the path he would have to follow on this earth in order to reach the place where the One could be found who would teach the people about truth and the great unknown God.

Look, this seer from Nubia will be here in the Caesarea Philippi area before midday with quite a large number of companions. We shall therefore send a messenger to him to request that he should bring them here! They came with many camels and brought many valuable treasures with them. They will pay for anything they consume here in gold and precious stones.

You, Marcus, please see to it that these Nubians are well looked after! When you asked Me yesterday evening to remain here for another day, I agreed as otherwise I and My disciples would already have departed this morning before sunrise to meet their caravan as they search for Me. However, I stayed, and our presence today will provide much work for your household: nevertheless, you will be well rewarded."

The Lord Sends a Messenger to meet the Nubian Caravan.

Ref: "The Great Gospel of John" Vol.4: Ch 180 by Jakob Lorber

Marcus asks Me with a very happy look on his face: "My Omniscient Lord! How many of them are there?"

I say: "The head count is exactly seventy, of which thirty-four are women and thirty-six men just like their fugitive ancestors. The one without a wife is the seer, and the second unmarried one is his servant!

Look this is how these black people became fugitives nearly a thousand years ago, basically because of a change in the laws which in Moses' time were not quite the same as before the Great Flood! The old leader, who became a fugitive, wished to revive the old customs and habits but he only succeeded in making many enemies, who began to persecute him and his followers in a despicable way, so that finally he had no option but to seek refuge from the superior, blind, fanatical strength of his many enemies.

The escape was therefore a prophetic portent of the coming of a higher light and in Moses' time indicated to the worthier descendants of Cain as well, that the light of redemption would also shine forth for them. These black people cannot fully aspire to reach Jacob's ancient well like the children of Abraham, but nevertheless they will still be able to imbibe the splendid waters, if they thirst for them.

Now let us choose a messenger who has mastered the language of upper Egypt! In Julius' camp there is a captain of the guard; call him to Me, so that I can instruct him as to how he can recognize the leader immediately and what he should say to him!"

Julius himself got up immediately and hurried to the camp, called the guard, and brought him to Me.

When this typical Roman reached Me, he said: "Son of the highest and most noble Zeus! What instructions do You have for me? I am most unworthy to receive any orders from You - the Son of the highest God only gives orders to subordinate gods, then to the princes on this earth, then to the most senior generals, then to their colonels and captains, and only then to their slaves, which we have the honor to be - however You, most High Lord, wish to make an exception here and I therefore ask You to give me Your holy instructions!"

I say: "Very good, very good, My dear friend! You are still a typical Roman, but nevertheless faithful and honest in your beliefs and true to your station in life. You have served for some time in Egypt and have learned to understand and speak the old Egyptian language, and now you are being asked to carry a message for Me to the area near Caesarea Philippi. You are a good rider and on horseback you will soon find the right place.

Near the town which was burned down you will meet a caravan of seventy black people while at the front, riding on two camels in white livery, you will find the leader on the right and his servant on the left. The leader will greet you when you are still some distance away. He is dressed completely in white garments, but you will see that his face is coal black as well as his hands and feet – however his heart looks much brighter than the skin on his body. Say to him: 'You have reached your goal; follow me! Within a few moments you will be standing in the presence of Him, for whom you have searched for His appearance to you seven times in a vision!'



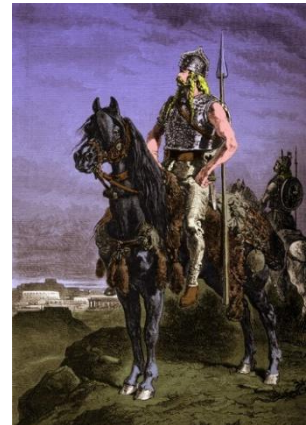
Just say this to him in the ancient Egyptian tongue which you speak rather well! Go now, saddle your horse and ride quickly to the point where the main roads cross and there you will meet him!"

When the guard captain had heard Me out, he bowed deeply and said: "A Roman veteran never bows except to the gods; but You alone deserve our admiration and worship! I will proceed to carry out Your instructions!"

The already grey-haired warrior hurries away, quickly mounts his Arab horse in full armor and gallops like an arrow to the chosen spot. A dust cloud in the distance was a sure sign that the large caravan was approaching the meeting place. Our messenger was on the spot in a few minutes, but he still had to wait for a quarter of an hour for all the people in the large caravan to arrive. We could see them if we stepped round the corner of the house as the distance to the junction was scarcely half an hour's walk away.

When the leader reached our guard captain armed to the teeth, the latter asked, as was the Roman custom of war, where he was heading and what had happened in his native land to make him undertake the journey.

The leader came to a halt, looked the Roman squarely in the eye and said in a very serious voice: "Roman! Who told you to expect me here? Today we have already come from the great sea and have travelled over steppes and through forests. From Alexandria ships carried us over the sea and only the birds could see us from Egypt to here! You are the first person we encountered during the whole trip; how could you know that we would arrive? Who informed you of our arrival? Are you clairvoyant? But you are carrying arms which have often been covered in human blood and cannot therefore be clairvoyant. You should however know that there is primordial, supreme Godhead mightier than all your gods and above all men, no matter what the color of their skin!



Seven times I had the same vision and in it I always saw this area illuminated in an indescribable way. A small group of people whose skin was white or brown in

color was already standing in this intense light and they themselves were shining like the sun. However, in their midst there was one individual who shone more brightly than a hundred thousand suns! All the light originated from Him and, yes, it gave me the feeling that the whole of infinity was filled beyond measure with His incomparable light! However, despite His incredibly intense light, it nevertheless did not cause any pain in the way that the much weaker light from the sun inflicts pain on us.

At the end of the vision which was always the same I invariably heard the clearly spoken words: 'Go there, you black person, and your night will be illuminated!' I told all my black brothers and sisters, and we decided to undertake this trip from Nubia which has already taken three months.

I knew quite well where we had to go as my spirit, which had already accompanied me for seven years, had informed me that the place which I saw in my vision was to be found in Asia along the coast of the great sea. I immediately recognized it from the sea, which I had pictured seven times in my vision. When we were at the right place, we disembarked. Immediately we saw a road which took us to this place - and here you are to meet us! Please tell me, who told you about us? Speak up! I anticipate something wonderful!"

The Roman said: "You have reached the end of your difficult journey! Within a few moments you will be standing in the presence of Him, the One you have searched for after seeing Him in your visions seven times!"

The leader immediately instructed all of them to follow the Roman as he was clearly a messenger sent by Him, whom they were searching for.

The Roman immediately rode in front and the whole caravan followed him."

The Lord Speaks with the Leader of the Nubians.

Ref: "The Great Gospel of John" Vol.4: Ch 181 by Jakob Lorber

The ride went smoothly, and our captain of the guard brought the whole caravan to us, as we sat contentedly at the tables.

When My Jarah saw the pitch-black faces with their prominent blood-red lips and remarkably white eyes, she was frightened and said: "O Lord, will these beings really not harm us? They really look so dreadfully black! I have already seen Moors, but not as strikingly black as these people! Just look at the strong sets of teeth! It is certain, My Lord, that if I were not with You, I would begin to be terribly afraid! To fall in love with a black man like that would really present a challenge to a tender-hearted girl!"



I say: "Very well, My dearest daughter, - but be sensible, My little child! Who should be afraid of a color? You are now perhaps being a little childish, - but that does not matter! Just pay attention carefully to everything; because there will be some important matters to be discussed!"

Jarah says: "However, I shall most probably not understand a great deal as the old Egyptian tongue is a closed book to me and these black men speak no other language!"

I say: "Everything will be translated - so be calm, be silent and just listen!"

Hearing this, Jarah quietens down and I immediately called the wise man who was their leader to come to Me and asked him what had motivated him and his companions to travel so far. Of course, I already knew the whole story from the beginning, but I was nevertheless obliged to ask to provide him with the opportunity to express himself and reveal his intentions.

In reply to My question, which I put to him in the Hebrew tongue, the leader also spoke in our language and answered: "For me You are the nameless one who is the most exalted person on this earth. Forgive this poor, weak, half-man, if I dare to make the hesitant point that I recognize in you the very same person I saw four months ago in my seven identical visions surrounded by an indescribably bright light. I began to look for that person and have travelled to the ends of this earth. Now, touched to the depths of my heart, I believe I have truly found him! Would you, most noble lord, please tell me, if I am right?"

I say: "It would be of little value to you if I were to say yes or no; you must recognize the truth for yourself! Seek the truth and it will be clear to you! You have come so far but you can also go further; however, you yourself must have serious and steadfast intent! No external guidance is of any value if it is not simultaneously received from within your own mind. Look how well you now speak Hebrew! Can you remember ever having learned this language? As your companions now also understand this language quite well, ask them if they have ever learned Hebrew at any time! Go over and convince yourself of this!"

The leader guides his camel to his companions and speaks in Hebrew to them. All of them understand him and even answer him in our language. The leader is now completely astonished and cannot explain to himself how he and all his companions have gained their knowledge of Hebrew - he is of course unaware that this is a feat within My powers.

After this encounter the leader returns to Me, still sitting on his camel, and says: "Most exalted person on earth! I am at a loss as I sit here in my black skin, as this is the first trip I have ever undertaken! I have never become acquainted with the languages and customs of other countries and am totally without experience in all aspects of life. At home in my own country, things are very simple. The land is good and beautiful, but it does not offer us anything new. It is therefore possible that this land here has the ability to imbue a foreigner, as soon as he enters its borders, with the spirit of the local language so that he can immediately speak to the natives as if he himself were one of them. Whether this is possible or not, I cannot say. Please, therefore, give me an explanation! In my own country I was never able to put anything like this to the test as no foreigner ever came to visit us!"

I say: "First dismount from your camels, lead them to the strip of meadow near the sea, so that they can enjoy their necessary respite and be able to take you back to your country more easily - the return journey is certainly no shorter in distance than the way here was! Then come back again as that will show how much enlightenment you are all able to take!"

The leader bows and says: "Most exalted man among men! You are quite right that we can only dare to place our very unholy feet on this holy earth as, judging from my visions, this land must be immeasurably holy!"

I say: "If it is not too holy for the feet of your camels, it will certainly not be too holy for your human feet!"

The leader says: "Yes, this is truly, truly, truly so! Most exalted of men among men on this earth, You are most kind and exceedingly wise!"

Saying this, he guides his camel back to his companions and informs them of My wishes. Immediately the camels kneel, and the riders descend to the ground. These well-trained animals then stand up again and are led to the strip of grass beside the sea where they start to graze quite contentedly. Ten of the Negroes are instructed to look after the camels while the rest, together with their leader, immediately return to Me.

When they reach Me, I first ask the leader to tell Me his name, and he says: "My name describes what I am and, in our tongue, it is OU BRATOU VISHAR. With us no one has a name unless he describes his occupation. Otherwise, we are all called the same: SLOUVI."

The Leader Describes His Journey to Memphis.

Ref: "The Great Gospel of John" Vol.4: Ch 182 by Jakob Lorber

I ask the leader further: "Where did you get this quite valuable education?"

Oubratouvishar says: "About ten years ago I and my personal manservant followed the Nile, accompanied by another twenty of our strongest helpers leading a good herd of cattle as anyone travelling in that region must take along a healthy herd as he might otherwise perish on the way. Figs and dates do not grow everywhere, only on good and fertile ground. However, there is no shortage of grass along the Nile, and the traveler therefore always has a nourishing supply of cows' milk, which adds flavor to any meal.

Thus equipped, it was ten years or ten rainy seasons ago, that we tried to make a trip downstream, as I have said. For a few days we made good progress without any problems; but on the third day we began to hear a mighty thundering noise some distance away. We hurried onward and after the length of time it took to count to a thousand, we came to the first cataract on the Nile. There we had little prospect of further progress. One of our best climbers reached the top of a high rock to investigate the whole area. When he came back down, he described a possible route to me which went some distance away to the left of the Nile but returned to its bank further downstream. I decided to follow this route. There was certainly no lack of rocks and other obstacles on this detour. It was evening, although the heat was still intense, before we finally arrived at an oasis overgrown with an abundance of palms and papyrus trees with a gushing spring at its center which we and our herds appreciated a great deal. Here we rested for a full day.

On the second day we broke camp again at the first crack of dawn and continued our journey. By sunrise we had again reached the Nile and had come to a wide road we had never seen before which we then followed and within half a day, we were close to the city, which our grandparents had told us so much about. About two thousand paces outside the city, we set up camp. My servant and I did, however, ride into the city to request permission to camp near the city with our essential herds of cattle.

When my servant and I reached the city, we were surrounded by a crowd of very brown-skinned people who asked me who I was and where I came from. Others immediately guessed and said: 'Thot e Noubiez!' (This is a Nubian!), and I replied:

'Yes, I am a Nubian and I want to gain experience and learn a variety of good and beautiful things from you perfect people!'

These inquisitive people then send an old man to me, who questioned me in detail about many things and finally even went with us to our camp. It was only then that he revealed himself completely and told us that he was the high priest of the city, and, at the same time, a proconsul appointed by Rome to rule the city and the wide surrounding area. I immediately gave him a gift of seven of the best cows, two bulls and twenty of our sheep with the finest wool.

This gesture made the old man very well disposed to us and he said to me: 'Our long established, pure wisdom will be very useful to you! But do not take up any of our totally decadent customs as they are worse than appalling! This city was once the pride of the region, a fact which is still very clearly expressed in its name: Memavise (Greek: Memphis) which means 'has the highest name'; now this nameless 'highest' is only a widespread rubbish heap, as you will soon easily convince yourselves!

The people who still live here do not have any belief left in a supreme Godhead on the one hand and on the other, they are immersed in the most profound superstition from which they can never be freed. There are only a few of us who still maintain the long-established, truthful recognition that there is a unique, everlasting, true God. The people, blind and stupid, believe in a few thousand gods. They offer god-like reverence even to animals and their corpses and that we must accept that.

It is most probable that our ancestors planted the seed in that they paid some animals, because of their usefulness, a kind of respect almost as demi-gods, a policy designed to encourage the people to tend these useful farms and domestic animals in the best way. In so doing, the elders of course only intended to illustrate to their as yet very primitive subjects the variety of ways in which divine love and wisdom are disseminated in nature. In time, however, these people appeared to become more honorable the more they regressed into the past and became enveloped in an aura of divinity. Evil and unscrupulous so-called teachers had an easy task to ascribe some divinity to every event in primordial history in order to immerse their blind underlings as deeply as possible in the darkest superstition.

Therefore, take great care, honest Nubians, and only accept what you will hear from me as being a correct version of the truth. Reject everything you see and hear from the common people as it is worse than very unreliable! You will see them making sacrifices and performing all kinds of empty rituals. Yes, it is true that on great festive occasions you will even see me standing at the front holding shining ornate objects. Do not be deceived by that as only my outer skin is involved with all that. My inner being is and always will be devoted to the one, everlasting, uniquely true God, whose love is my life and whose light is my true knowledge and cognition.

You and your servant shall come on foot with me to my residence in the city, where I will give you all the necessary instructions as to how you and your companions should conduct yourselves here. I will also show you the best place to camp with your herds in a spot where you as foreigners can stay for a full year without being disturbed by anyone. However, you and your servant will stay with me so that I can instruct you in many things.'

I said: 'Noble lord! Will you allow us to bring the gift which you graciously accepted from me and deliver it to you in the city?'

This truly good proconsul then said in a loving and friendly manner: 'Not now, but in three days' time, when you have moved to the new location! However, there you will have to wear shoes on your feet, as is our custom, because at night there are many little insects and worms which creep around on the sandy grass-covered earth, enter your skin beneath the toenails and can in time cause great pain. In my house I will provide you with these as best I can as I have a number of servants, attendants and slaves.'

My servant and I went with the commander into the large city. After walking some four thousand paces we came to a large open square which was surrounded by impressive large buildings made from dressed square ashlar. A few of these large buildings had already been considerably damaged, but many were still well maintained. One was designed with many columns and inside the widely spaced long colonnades one could see all kinds of gigantic statues. The columns were also decorated with many devices and inscriptions, which the commander often explained to me afterwards. Next to the hall of columns there was an extremely large palace in which there was much lively activity.

Our host said: 'See, this is my house; just come in and look at all the things it contains.'"

The Curse of the Over-developed Culture of the Egyptians

Ref: "The Great Gospel of John" Vol.4: Ch 183 by Jakob Lorber

(Oubratouvisar:) "In front of this palace there stood two enormously large columns or obelisks which were completely freestanding, and which were inscribed on every facet with a multitude of symbols, figures, and writings; in front of the large hall with many columns, two similar obelisks had also been erected.

Hesitantly we entered the proconsul's house and had to walk for some time before we reached the living quarters. However, it was so marvelously beautiful in these rooms that we were left completely speechless.

In my mind I compared my miserable hut at home with this residence and said to myself: 'Why are we black people so amazingly deficient in our knowledge and our cognition? Why are we unable to construct buildings like these? Why are we still not familiar with the production of metals? We still have no cutting tools other than those, which we bartered from the Egyptians in exchange for our raw produce from nature! How primitive our looms are and how badly finished our clothes! In our community there is no spirit, no talent, no zeal; we are scarcely on a slightly higher plane than our apes!'

When I was lost in these thoughts, my heart was breaking, and I started to weep saying loudly: 'Oh why are we black people not just animal beings who can neither think nor experience any feelings?! What marvelous things true human beings, the true gods of the earth, can create, while we negroes who are half man and half animal can do nothing which is comparable! Yet we are still obliged to feel strongly about all these things of beauty which true humans have created!'

The proconsul then said to me: 'Think nothing of all that!' We already have grey hair, and these marvelous treasures can no longer fill us with joy as we have already lived too long. You, however, are still children at the peak of your strength,

constantly and increasingly possessed by your emerging enthusiasm. Our lives in this world are already at an end, our laurel crowns lie withering in the pit of oblivion, our palaces are collapsing, and our current level of knowledge and cognition is worse than abysmal. Here we have a few smiths and a few weavers left but all our technological requirements must be met either from Rome or from Greece.

It is true that a few thousand years ago, more gods were living in this country than human beings and structures were erected, the ruins of which will always continue to amaze new arrivals on this earth! What we currently produce, however, can only be classed as destruction, both in physical and spiritual terms. You on the other hand are still an unspoiled, primordially developed, young, strong nation, still able to think and have your ambitions. You therefore have the opportunity for your works to outshine those produced by the people of this country and therefore to become greater than they ever were.

However, if you wish as people to live very happily on this earth, retain your old-fashioned simplicity! Firstly, it will cause you little trouble and little work and, secondly, you only have very few needs imposed by nature, and these are easily covered. Your cattle breeding on the rich grasslands brings you few worries or problems, while your agriculture, which you only work on a very limited scale, does not count for anything and even your clothes are simple and easy to produce. You therefore need only very little time to meet your physical needs and you can therefore devote yourselves increasingly, even exclusively to spiritual matters! Look here, this is much more valuable than building these palaces with blood and sweat at the cost of a hundred thousand times a hundred thousand human lives, just so that time, the tooth of destruction will have thousands of years to gnaw on it!

Finally, what is an artificial heap of rocks piled on top of each other, compared with just one blade of grass, created by the great spirit of God? I say to you: nothing! Every blade of grass, every tree is a building constructed by God, grown out of the dear earth without our input of trouble or work, which then within a short time refreshes our palate with the sweet taste of a fruit. Compare the trouble and the enormous effort which people invest in a palace! What is it that they gain from it afterwards, when their work has been completed after many bloody years? Nothing except wretched nourishment to increase their vanity, or to awaken jealousy in other foreign nations which will lead in time to war and all kinds of persecution!

My dear black friend, this is truly the wretched fate of my people, who were so stupid as to cover their most beautiful and most fertile grasslands with these lifeless palaces, which otherwise would have supported many hundred thousand of very fertile trees ready to drop their noble fruit into the laps of the people living in very simple huts! Just consider that on the land on which this city is built, ten thousand people together with their large herds could easily find enough space to live. On the contrary, however, a hundred thousand people currently live within these damaged walls! What a life most of them lead!

Previously, as history teaches us, this land was a breadbasket from which, in a time of need, foreign nations were supplied with bread, while nowadays we often must bring in our grain from faraway countries and peoples! Our herds are in terrible condition. Thousands of people in a city like this do not work at all for their pittance of gold and silver. They drift around idly day after day, keep company with venal prostitutes and often speak to them in an uncouth animal-like way. This

behavior inevitably causes a great deal of illness - something of which you have no experience. During the day, while the sun shines, you will see this large city completely lacking in people and it is only when the cooler night air has arrived that they emerge from their artificial cave dwellings like predatory animals and entertain themselves in any way that pleases them. These are, your simple son of true nature, the blessings which the people have gleaned from their great culture of building with stones!"

The Blessing which comes from the Primitive Culture of Simple Men

Ref: "The Great Gospel of John" Vol.4: Ch 184 by Jakob Lorber

(Oubratouvishar:) "Therefore be true to your great and unique natural purity and never have any ambition to acquire such a wretched national culture! Never build any cities! Dwell in your simple huts and you will remain for all times the most fortunate nation on earth. This assessment will be even more valid if you retain your proper recognition of the everlasting true God, honoring and loving Him alone! Even if you cannot see Him, He can see you and He will always strengthen you with the necessary power to combat any elements which are hostile to man. According to the original laws of nature, man is lord of all things which live and breathe on, within and above this earth.

You are still what mankind should be! The fierce lion, as well as the tigers, panthers, hyenas, wolves, bears, snakes, and adders flee from your presence; only herds which have been tamed follow you every step of the way! Equipped with all his unique properties, man still stands on the same elevated primordial level where the Creator placed him at the beginning of all creation. Lie down on the grass where the rattlesnake and the poisonous viper are playing their malicious games and they will abandon the holy place where man, as lord of Nature, is taking his rest! Angry ants, the curse of so many forests and plains, leave the scene as soon as man with his primordial strength settles in an area and builds a house for himself. The lion, the panther and the predatory tiger stay away from herds which are guarded by true men, and the crocodile, the dragon of the Nile, is never to be seen in those regions which are inhabited by mankind. The ibis, the stork and the *icz ne ma* (ichneumon = has no poison) willingly serve man and cleanse the land of all creeping animal vermin, and their sharp eagle eyes seek out dead corpses which they then devour to ensure that the air is never polluted.

What a splendid existence people enjoy in every country area, compared with the wretched life led by people in the cities, who are consumed by arrogance and foul-smelling love of self! All their primordial life's forces are extinguished, and they have become foreign bodies, foreign beings in the vast kingdom of Nature which surrounds them. They no longer have any contact with God and consequently even with any other of His creatures. They are obliged to build strong castles and fortresses to protect themselves against the hostility of Nature!

Today, if I were to allow one hundred of these people to spend the night on the grassland where I told you to camp, not one of them will have survived with his life when dawn breaks. These are no longer people, but pale shadows of their former selves and their crippled bodies harbor all kinds of evil and immature natural spirits and unnatural vices. Their behavior towards others is no longer governed by their

God-given individuality and they have more of an animal-like existence. There is no power left in them anymore and even less available in the outside world. Their nature no longer allows others to believe their beings have attained their highest achievable goals - merely total depravity and complete destruction of the platform on which all creatures are supposed to reach their perfect state. All other creatures are therefore hostile to these people and try to exterminate them in every possible way because they expect nothing more from them.

My noble, black-skinned friend, you and your whole nation should therefore be happy, that you are black and that you still live the innocent huts of the spring of life, particularly because you still as a result represent what a true person should be according to the ordinances of the supreme Spirit of God! Therefore, always remain as you are now, and hand your culture down to your most distant descendants, and you and they will then never have cause to complain about the distress and misery of human life!"

The Nubian Camp in Egypt

Ref: "The Great Gospel of John" Vol.4: Ch 185 by Jakob Lorber

(Oubratouvishar:) (the proconsul continued): "Now we shall proceed to the place where I will show you where you can stay! At the same time, I will provide a guard to protect you for as long as you are here. The guard will warn off the criminal element which would not be concerned in the slightest if it were to raze your camp to the ground both physically and morally. I shall not ask if you have understood since I know that you have grasped what I have said. In future you will understand me even better!"



Having said this, the proconsul gave a signal by striking a metal plate which resounded loudly and a large number of armed men with dark brown skin miraculously appeared. He gave his instructions in a foreign tongue which we did not understand. However, when the considerate commander noticed that I was uneasy, he comforted me by explaining in my language what he had said to his armed men. He had informed them that they must offer us their best possible protection against the intrusion of the decadent city dwellers, which he no longer regarded as members of the human race.

One of their officers, dressed in nearly the same way as our friend who showed us the way, remarked to his commander that, although the luxuriant grassland was rich, it was infested by poisonous snakes and vipers, and that people and cattle could not live on it.

The commander said: 'That is certainly true of decadent people and their cattle, but these are still genuine primordial people who are undisputed masters of all of Nature's kingdom and its creatures, whatever the species! The numerous poisonous snakes will not only leave the people unharmed, but all of the wildlife will take their youth and leave this otherwise most beautiful spot immediately. As their guards you will not have the slightest problem with the vermin, and you can be fully

confident of that! - But now, bring me twenty-two pairs of leather banded shoes, which we will give to these unspoilt people, to prevent them unnecessarily damaging their feet on our rough sandy soil!’

The shoes quickly arrived. My servant and I each immediately received a pair of very comfortable shoes and on the proconsul’s instructions the other twenty pairs were handed to our companions by four of the guards. After they had also put on the shoes, they were asked by the guards to follow them to the new meadow. In the meantime, I, with my servant and the commander all accompanied by the other guards, walked down many streets to reach the spot outside the city where the large stretch of beautiful meadow was situated, plentifully endowed with excellent grass, together with several dates, fig and orange trees and several other varieties of fruit. I also concluded that the meadow would seldom be visited by other people as we could hear the rustle of countless rattlesnakes in the distance.

Soon afterwards my companions also arrived with the large herds and the camels. When they reached the field, they did not wait until the wildlife fled before bringing in our herds. Without showing the slightest fear, they took possession of the meadow and its fruit, immediately walked in all directions across the wide pasture while all the vermin fled to the Nile so that for more than half an hour its surface was covered with the creatures. There were even four Nile dragons which took flight before my companions and our herds.

The proconsul also explained this phenomenon to the guards assigned to us and told them that they could fearlessly go with us to every part of the meadow as he was already fully convinced that even on the first night, they would not find a single adder or any other snake on the whole pasture. That was how it was – in the evening, after about an hour, the pasture was free of wildlife of any kind.

On the other side of the Nile, we could see whole flocks of Egyptian sheep fleeing from the escaping poisonous snakes. The shepherds were fleeing with the sheep, screaming horribly but nevertheless reaching the refuge of a Nile bridge. However, the flocks suffered losses in that quite a few lambs were caught and eaten by the larger animals. There were also colonies of rabbits on the other side, and they were also surprised by the unexpected invasion with the result that many of their young too were consumed by the snakes.

The guards took good note of the previously inaccessible delicious dates, figs, and oranges, and also of the very beautiful roscize (the carob tree or ‘John’s bread’), which was generally used for camel food.

The captain of the guard said to the proconsul: ‘Honor to Isis and Osiris! Finally, we can also harvest here again and that has not been the case in living memory!’

However, their commander said: ‘The crop for the full year will belong to those who cleaned this field. You can take only what they allow you to take, but not a single leaf from a tree without permission! In addition, refrain from invoking your trifling local gods in front of these very unspoilt people as there is not one man in your group to whom I have not presented the teachings of the only true God! Speak of Him, but certainly avoid Isis and Osiris, and even Apis! All of that is and forever will be as nothing!’

After all this the proconsul said to me: ‘As you now can see for yourself, you have been supplied with everything with the help of the Almighty! I will leave you

now, but tomorrow at the crack of dawn I will be with you again. I will then give you the appropriate lessons here in the great, open-air temple of the Almighty! What you have learned from me you should also pass on to your companions! Farewell, and may the Almighty protect you!’

With these words he returned to the city. He must have already enjoyed great respect from the Egyptian people as whenever people met him, they bowed down to the ground before him. However, he pretended not to notice any of the differences shown to him, quickly taking his leave as if deep in thought.

When the sun had set, many sightseers came out of the city but none of them dared to come closer than twenty paces from the edge of the infamous snake field. Some called to us to leave as we would otherwise inevitably suffer the greatest harm. However, the guard pushed the curious people back and explained to them that there was no longer any danger as our secret powers had served to cause all the poisonous vermin to swim across the Nile.

Afterwards the inquisitive ones went away, and we tended our herds, which that evening rewarded us with so much of the best and most nutritious milk that we were quite unable to consume it all. We asked the guards if they drank milk too. They joyfully affirmed that they did, and we gave them so much that they too were not able to finish it off. The vast quantity of leftovers was poured into containers which we had brought with us, to make cheese.

For a whole year we have lived here and gleaned much knowledge from the good man, particularly regarding true cognition of the almighty Godhead. We were allowed to depart on the most amicable term after a year, and we returned to our own land in high spirits.

Soon afterwards I had my visions, and I immediately arranged for a caravan to travel to Memphis in order to inform the proconsul of what I had seen. He, however, already knew of you, most Exalted One, and pointed me in Your direction, described to me the best route to Alexandria and entrusted me with the name of an experienced sea captain, who duly brought us here. He also offered me a translator, but I did not take him with me.

Now you know, most Exalted Man-among-Men, how I came by my small store of wisdom. Please now tell me unequivocally whether or not I am standing at the right spot or whether I have further to go! I am not able to delay my departure as the distance I must travel to my homeland is considerable.”

The Nubian Requests Confirmation of the Presence of the Lord

Ref: “The Great Gospel of John” Vol.4: Ch 186 by Jakob Lorber

I say: “I already have told you that it is of little or no value to you, if I were to tell you: ‘I am the one!’ or: ‘I am not the one!’ That you must establish yourself in some way and you can do that quite easily since you are not lacking in spiritual qualities. Just consider what it is possible for mankind to do and what is impossible! Did nothing strike you as unusual? Did you not notice anything remarkable happening to you or to anyone else?”

The black man replies: “As I mentioned earlier, nothing particularly struck me – with the exception that when we came to this land, we were immediately able to talk in your tongue. To speak frankly, however, when I first arrived here several

things appeared to me to have a miraculous quality but the longer, I stay here, the more natural you all seem to be.

The ability to speak the language is therefore the only thing which borders on the miraculous. However, as I said earlier, it can be a natural, even if inexplicable, consequence of the special character of this country. I have experienced something similar during my travels through the length and breadth of Egypt when I met with Romans and Greeks. They spoke in their own tongues, but we understood them quite well and could even converse with them. The conversation did not flow as easily as it has here but that can be attributed to the character of a country, the quality of its air or the aura that surrounds it!

As fundamentally very simple people, we are much more receptive to all kinds of appearances and impressions. We can therefore see the souls of the dead, including those souls who, by their own admission, had never had a bodily presence. These natural souls can also be recognized from their ability suddenly to change their configuration and disperse themselves into all manner of smaller beings, then revert to human form - a phenomenon we have never observed with the souls of our dead brothers and sisters.

We asked the wise proconsul in Memphis if he had seen this with his own eyes, but he said: That is only an ability possessed by very simple, unsophisticated, natural folk, who do not even know the name of any artificial form of life. With him and the Egyptians it was said never to have happened. Now and then isolated cases crop up, but they are impossibly vague and inexplicable, while with us everything is defined, natural and therefore also more easily explained.

From that it can also readily be deduced how we can so quickly understand and speak a completely foreign tongue. If You, most exalted of men, just consider this point, your outstanding mind will help you to realize that, during our short stay here, we have not seen anything unusual which would irrevocably lead us to conclude that we had without a shadow of a doubt already reached the place which I saw in my visions.

There are many background details which correspond with it: a fisherman's house builds on a mountain on the shores of a small inland sea; many men of high standing and appearance; in all seriousness, You too have much in common with the man, radiant beyond belief, that I joyfully saw seven times in my visions. However, this resplendent presence used words to create His wishes; He spoke - and it came to pass! Heaven and earth were under His control, and innumerable multitudes awaited a wave of His hand!

Most exalted man among men, that is surely not the case here! I found here in Your presence, just as I did two years ago with the proconsul in Memphis, many very good and wise people, - but up to now I have found nothing here that I expected to find and I therefore ask you, if I have come to the right place or not. If you say yes, I will believe you and I will stay here as your word is quite sufficient for me and you are in any case a very wise man. However, if you say no, or if you say nothing again, we will begin our journey back home and retrieve our herds, which we left behind in exchange for gold and silver in Memphis when we consulted the wise proconsul. We will also repay the unused money which he loaned to us as he had no use for it at the time.

You can see, most exalted man among men, that I and all my companions - regardless of the fact that our flesh is not adorned with white skin - are neither false nor deceitful; we are all searching for absolute truth which is of supreme importance to us. We live in the hope of finding it here, but if not, then somewhere else! Please therefore confirm we are at the right place, and we will happily do anything you ask of us!"

I say to Raphael: "Go and give them a sign, so that they can know where they are!"

Raphael immediately goes to the black man (Oubratouvishar) and says: "My friend, what is it that you left behind at home, which you wished to return and fetch when you were in Memphis? You wished to give it to the proconsul as a special present of thanks for all the trouble he had taken from you. It had therefore been wrapped in fresh linen, but in your haste to depart you forgot it was lying in a corner of your hut, where it now remains. If you wish, I will bring it to you in an instant! Speak up - and your wish will be granted!"

The black man says: "No need to convince me that I have reached the right place - because the fact that you have told me what I left at home, tells me that I am at the right spot as only God's all-seeing eye could perceive my forgetfulness - you would however do me a great service as on my way home I wish to make the proconsul very happy because he delights in rare natural phenomena! The thing can at best only have a sentimental value and not a monetary one! Nevertheless, it is very beautiful!"

At this moment Raphael gives the beautiful natural specimen, wrapped in a linen cloth, to our black-skinned friend and asks him if it is the right one.

When this happens the black man nearly faints and cries out: "Yes, this is it, this it is! How could you possibly have brought the jewel here as you did not leave my presence for a second?! Did you steal it from me as a young, courageous Egyptian in the service of the proconsul, in an incomprehensibly clever way? Did you in fact secretly follow us to my hut a year ago when we came home from Memphis and remember its hiding place?"

Yes, but why am I asking all these stupid questions? A few moments before our departure I was holding it in my hands, but while I loaded up my camel and called my herd together, I placed it in a corner of my hut and covered it with a pumpkin shell! In my preoccupation with herding the animals and loading the camel, I forgot the beautiful natural specimen. You could not have stolen it from me! You have obviously fetched; but - how, how, how is that possible for you, a man who is visibly flesh and blood?! To leave here and return was the work of a split second! This is an achievement that is only possible for a God! You are either a God yourself or one of His closest servants!"

Raphael replies: "Not the first, and certainly the second! However, when I collected your beautiful natural specimen, I forgot to bring the pumpkin shell you used to cover it! You should have that as well! - Look, here it is! Put your little jewel in it and reveal it to us; since there are many here who would like to see the treasure you have found again!"

The Nubians Recognize the Lord.

Ref: "The Great Gospel of John" Vol.4: Ch 187 by Jakob Lorber

Now the black people are completely disoriented by one surprise coming on top of another as this is something they prize very highly. They are pure, still completely unspoiled natural people and with their true mastery of nature even now, they are able to achieve so much purely by virtue of the intensity of their total belief and their willpower. This must appear to the already decadent people commonly found in this world to be a great miracle and it would therefore be difficult to make any impression on these primitive souls by performing any other miracle for them. The healing of illness would be completely inappropriate as these true children of nature know no disease. Their old people always reach a great age and when they die, they always just fall quietly and painlessly asleep.

Their children never die, because they were fathered in an ordered society, and they came into this world fully mature and healthy through and through. Afterwards they were fed in a proper natural way and therefore no trace of disease could enter their bodies. If one were to cure any illness in their presence, one would first have to explain to them what an illness was and how it originated. However, in so doing one would have caused them more harm than good as knowledge of a sin and its consequences are almost as bad as having committed that sin already.

Somebody thought that reincarnation of a dead person might be quite effective. It would also mean nothing to these people! They view the death of the body as a great blessing from God to His people and would even consider transformation of this kind as a transgression against the ordinances of the supreme spirit of God, at least until I Myself am able to teach them a better interpretation. They would view the creation of a great storm with natural eyes in their very sensitive character as they themselves have always had a considerable influence over the natural spirits in the air, water, earth, and fire. However, a speed of movement which exceeds the speed of an arrow from one of their bows to an incomparable degree is a true miracle for these people. They consider a feat like that can only be performed by God and His highest servant spirits, never by weak mortals on this earth using their minds.

After the black people had recovered from their complete and utter amazement, their leader said to his companions: "Brothers! I and all your others have now witnessed a feat which can only be performed by God as even in our minds we cannot move as quickly to our homeland and back again as this servant of God has in fetching this little jewel of mine! We are therefore at the right spot. We must display the greatest reverence and continue to worship Him in spirit as He sits there at the big table with an unimaginably divine and exalted expression on His face.

The words He will speak to us in His inexpressible mercy and grace will from now on be our most holy commandment, which we will retain in our memories as securely as the clear image of our rocky homeland. In the same way our descendants will do this until the end of all the periods of time through which this earth still has passed! You recall the wise proconsul's prophecy about the everlasting dignity of this supreme God in human guise! It is in fact true and of that we are now fully convinced! Because it is true and nothing more or less than the truth, we also know what to do and observe in order to follow Him!

The journey here was long and difficult but even if it had been a thousand times further and a thousand times more difficult, it would not diminish in the slightest the magnificence of this incomprehensibly supreme blessing which we shall in all eternity never deserve! There He sits, the eternal, almighty Spirit in human form, He who made heaven and earth and everything that exists, merely by imposing His will and using His willpower creatively, just as the wise proconsul in Memphis explained to us in detail.

We are now standing before the true, everlasting God, who made us and has given us life. Every moment of our life is in His hands; if He wished, we would not exist anymore. In short, only He is everything in all things and everything that exists is as nothing without Him! This is what my vision meant and what we were taught in Memphis. We must therefore accept it and believe in it forever. - It now seems that the everlasting Lord and Master wishes to talk to us! Therefore, be most attentive, as if we were on a highly dangerous lion hunt, as that was the comparison given to us by the proconsul in Memphis!"

Oubratouvishar describes his Nubian homeland.

Ref: "The Great Gospel of John" Vol.4: Ch 189 by Jakob Lorber

(The Lord:) "Earlier I asked you if you were hungry and thirsty and merely posed the question because I could see only too well that you are weak with hunger and thirst. The day has already lasted for four hours and since yesterday you have not eaten, nor have you had anything to drink since midday. You were unable to have any milk on the ship and the water on board was already putrid and therefore undrinkable. My immediate concern for you is that you should build up strength in your body again as without it you will be unable to enjoy the relaxing rest, which is essential for you to absorb and retain the spiritual food in a more permanent way. *To attempt to teach the Gospel to an audience when their eyes and ears proclaim their hunger and thirst without offering them food beforehand, would be the pinnacle of worldly self-serving foolishness! The first priority is that your bodies should be nourished and only then will we look to the Gospel!*

However, here, you will have to be content with the offerings on My table, which are not the same as you are accustomed to consuming and leave your motheaten dates and figs for your camels to eat. Please therefore sit at the tables over there which are empty, and you will quickly be provided with sufficient to eat and drink! You, Oubratouvishar, sit down here as you too are a real king of your people, and this is a table for kings who must decide together how to lead their people and develop them into true human beings!"

Everybody follows my wishes and our Marcus, with the help of unseen hands, is at once ready with a quantity of the best fish. When the black people are seated at the tables, fish, bread, salt, and wine are placed before them and the guests are invited to enjoy the meal that has been provided in this way. They soon begin to eat the still steaming fish, consume the bread and wine, and they find everything to be excellently prepared and very tasty.

Their leader, already gaining in confidence, said: "Lord of my life, food as tasty as this has never before touched my palate! At times we also eat fish at home, but we regard it as a penance food. Anyone failing to observe our established rules

must eat fish. If we were able to prepare fish like this, to be required to eat it would no longer be a penance!

What kind of water is this that we are drinking here? It tastes indescribably good, and one could drink it at any time without being thirsty and constantly eat this honey-sweet bread! In Memphis I was sometimes offered bread to eat by the proconsul, but it was not as sweet as this by a long way. However, above all I am astonished by this water! Where is the source? Are we able to buy it from you? I would like to take some of it home so that people can taste the spring water from this heavenly country.

The earth is also much more beautiful here than in our homeland! Here there is extraordinary variety! Everywhere thickets and trees grow in abundance but at home there are only a few places where the vegetation is like that, - otherwise there is only wasteland which is desolate and barren. Here most of the mountains are covered to their summit with very beautiful trees and look soft and inviting while at home we see naked rocks, with only the occasional patch of greyish red moss. These rocks look totally destroyed and weather-beaten. In color they are mostly burnished red and dark grey and for the most part they are so steep that they can only be climbed in a few places - and one is always taking one's life in one's hands. Once you have reached the top, the heat is unbearable especially after midday, as then the mountain tops begin to glow so fiercely that fish placed on the rocks is completely cooked in a few moments, even the meat of lambs and goats. In the afternoon even the eagles cannot rest on a mountain top, and the ibex descends to the fields near the rushing waters of the Nile.

Yes, we live in a very hard and extremely hot country, where it is quite difficult at times to be a human being and survive! Especially during the late summer, it would be quite impossible to live far away from the Nile as there are then days when the rocks and the desert sand begin to melt - especially in the afternoon if the midday wind begins to blow. Then we can almost see flames rolling towards us over the sandy floor of the wide expanse of desert. People and animals then have no choice but to embrace the good Nile, which by some miracle, is a very cold stream as it passes through our region.

As the last quarter of the year approaches and before the rainy month arrives, we have the most terrible time of all because then the fire storms begin. The air becomes horribly sultry. Clouds like incredible columns of fire rise from behind the mountains and finally cover the whole sky, while countless bolts of lightning come crashing down from the grey-black blanket of the sky accompanied by fearsome claps of thunder which terrorize both people and animals. Although they do not cause much damage, because they disperse high up in the sky, it is however no joke to have to listen to this cracking, roaring, hissing and thundering for sometimes as long as forty days and forty nights - apart from also living with the fear of being horribly burned by one of the lightning strikes coming too close to earth, a fate which from time to time befalls us and in particular those people who do not diligently smear their bodies with fat.

When the fire storm season is over, it starts to rain, and the rain continues for about four to six weeks or complete phases of the moon. The rain which falls is fine but dense and, on some mountain tops, it sometimes snows. Towards the end of the rainy season the temperature often drops noticeably so that we must warm

ourselves at the fire. This is also not particularly beneficial but nevertheless better than living through late summer.

This is our life and how we live and behave! We must endure much hardship and enjoy very few pleasures. What heaven these surroundings are compared to ours! What a joy it must be to live in these areas which are truly heaven on earth, and how desolate and sad our country is by comparison! But You, My Lord, decreed that it should be like this and that we, sitting there in our black skins, would not wish to have it otherwise. Life is perfectly tolerable as it is. It is true to say that none of us has ever had any complaint regarding Your divine ordinance!

Our coal-black skin is in some respects quite a burden for us to bear, firstly because, in our wide experience, it attracts heat far more than any other brighter color, and secondly, because we are unattractively ugly by comparison with you white-skinned people. Look for example at the heavenly shape of this young girl in our presence and consider how ugly one of our girls is on the other hand! We see it and we feel it - yet we cannot change color! What beautiful hair you have, and what an ugly tangle of short black wool we have to adorn our heads! However, we do not complain and are content with everything that You, My Lord, and Master, have ordained for us!

Now I must show you my beautiful natural specimen and You, My Lord, will graciously tell us what its value might be!"

Oubratouvishar Treasure

Ref: "The Great Gospel of John" Vol.4: Ch 190 by Jakob Lorber

At this point, Oubratouvishar unwrapped his jewel from the linen and placed it in front of Me, saying: "There it is, just as I found it among the rocks on a hillside. I was unable to do otherwise than pick it up and to keep it! Human hands had certainly never touched it before! It seems therefore to be pure, perhaps, we might say, a trick of nature. What is it, and what value might it have? I would never wish to give anyone a worthless present."

I say to him: "This is a very valuable precious stone, in fact an immense cut diamond. It was nevertheless cut and polished by human hands at the time when the Persians made war on the Egyptians and on that occasion, they penetrated as far as the Nubian desert. It was lost by a general when he was fighting many hungry lions and panthers. You are therefore going to present the commander of Memphis with a worldly gift of enormous value because it is so extraordinarily rare.

Just consider that this stone has been cut and polished for a hundred and seventy years. It became a jewel in the crown of the kings of Persia, until finally one of the kings gifted it as a reward to one of his greatest generals. In fact, that general lost it in the desert area bordering your country which was at that time overrun with lions and panthers. I have placed these animals there at that time as otherwise the then very warlike Persians would have discovered you and would have decimated your herds and flocks.

However, just as you were destined even to find, in your earthly life, a very valuable treasure which had lain among the rocks for several hundred years, you have also been chosen to find the most splendid and valuable treasure for your spirit and from that source, for your souls. You have searched and have found it in a most

honorable way! Your black skin shall not be a burden to you and black will remain one of My most respected colors.

The gospel which I will now preach to you, will only be kept pure by you. You will become My apostolic forerunner to your black brothers and sisters! However, within a short time I will send you a helper to support you and guide you to a very rich region in your country. This man will teach you agriculture and other useful skills which are of great utility in life on this earth.

In this, to you still totally foreign, country, you will be a contented and happy nation and will preserve the purity of My word and My teachings. Woe betide those who will later try to seek to oppress you and subjugate you. Against them I Myself will raise my shining sword of vengeance and slay them to the last man! In consequence your black people will live in an isolated but spacious corner, always a free nation until the end of time.

However, if you should in future fall out among yourselves - which must remain a possibility if you are free men - the powerful ones among you will make themselves kings, will punish you with harsh laws bringing your golden freedom to an end for a long time or even forever! Then your children will languish in great deprivation and long for redemption; but they will have a very long time to wait. Therefore, organize yourself in such a way that no kings can arise among your people - except those who are like yourself! You are not a tyrant but a true benefactor in dealing with your people and that is decreed in my ordinances. This is therefore how matters should remain with you!"

The Black People who followed on.

Ref: "The Great Gospel of John" Vol.4: Ch 191 by Jakob Lorber

(The Lord:) "My name is Jesus from Nazareth, here on earth as a person, and Jehovah for eternity; but from now on Jesus shall be eternal. Using His name, you will be able to do and to achieve everything not only in the short term, but for eternity!

Love Me as your God and Lord and Master above all and love each other as each of you loves himself. You will then remain in My love, in My strength and My power, and My light will never leave you!

However, if your love for Me and your poorer brothers and sisters should diminish, darkness will enter your hearts, and My strength and power in you will dissipate and become worthless! Even if you call out My name or wish something to happen in My name, it will no longer support you with My power and might as all the strength, all the power and all the successful deeds performed in My name can only subsist in love for Me and, through that love, for your neighbor!

My name alone achieves nothing - only the love within it, through it and for it and, in turn, for your neighbor! If a poor person approaches someone and begs for help, but this person says to him: 'Go and earn for yourself!', he certainly does not have My love and will not receive any power or strength!

Go now and inform your companions. Then come back and I Myself will continue with another gospel! So be it!"

Oubratouvishar bows down before Me and goes to his companions to tell them what I had told him. He was however utterly amazed to find that, instead of the twenty who had accompanied him, there were also thirty-four women seated at

the tables. He of course recognized them immediately as neighbors and close relatives, and it is understandable that his first question was precisely: How and when did you follow me here?

The newcomers answered him: "Seeing and hearing for oneself is far better than to be told about miraculous events even if the description comes from the mouth of the most trustworthy eye and ear witness! We were always only half a day behind you!

We would not have undertaken this trip had it not been for the arrival of an indescribably beautiful youth in shining white who came down to us from the skies and almost forced us to follow you. We gathered a herd of cows and bulls and a small flock of sheep and went with them to Memphis. There, the good proconsul and his people came to meet us some distance outside the city, and he told us that he had received a message from a youth of similar description and that he had therefore hurried to meet us.

The commander told us about you and in the meantime took good care of our animals, providing us in exchange with gold and silver pieces in a range of weights and values, so that we could use them wherever we went to buy all our food and other necessities. We thanked him and he gave us an escort to Alexandria who helped us on our way with all kinds of assistance. They also arranged for safe sea transport from Alexandria, and we were transported here over the seemingly unending stretch of water.

When we came ashore, we found your clear footprints impressed into the sand and we followed your tracks. We were ultimately so close to you that we could clearly see the dust thrown up by your camels. It was only when you were hidden behind a forest and a mountain that you were no longer in our sight.

However, the youth appeared again and brought us here in a manner that we are quite unable to describe. We can only say that we are astonished that we are here! How did we get here? We know nothing about the journey - except that it was like a very bad dream!

However, this most exalted person has instructed you to tell us something! What is it? Speak up! His appearance is very similar to the description you gave us of the image in your visions and that was the very reason why you and we travelled to this place! Speak up, speak to us!"

The Nature of Isis and Osiris

Ref: "The Great Gospel of John" Vol.4: Ch 192 by Jakob Lorber

The leader says: "We, my brothers, and sisters, believe that what you see before us undoubtedly exists because we have seen and heard everything with our own eyes and ears! All human wisdom, all our powers of comprehension and even pure, sober common sense, cannot grasp that it can be possible even to imagine what is actually here.

You cannot begin to suspect what is to be found here or imagine how it looks! After having my visions, I came close to picturing something immeasurably grand awaiting me but to conceive something so totally breathtaking and so inexpressibly infinite, was beyond even my wildest and most outlandish thinking and I did not dare to climb to such heights. Nevertheless, it is so and it is there, unmistakably, before our astonished eyes!

You recall that a year ago in Memphis, the proconsul and I loudly carried on our private discussion in front of you, even though he often expressed the opinion that it would suffice if I alone were to benefit by sharing his deep wisdom. I said however: 'Look, my lord, these are my brothers and sisters! Not one of them is inferior to me. Therefore, my lord, please do not keep secrets from them for my sake!' After that, the proconsul always spoke out loud and clearly.

When about six months later he took us to Kar-nag in Korak to lift the fabled veil of Isis. More than half of your numbers were also there with me, seeing and hearing everything just as I did.

There we saw two strange portraits – the first was of I-sis (the source of sustenance in primordial life), concealed behind a thick veil with next to her the image of Osiris (Ou sir iez; the pasture of the pure, spiritual person).

The first picture showed a colossal woman, her chest covered with many breasts, and it was also said that at times a cow was depicted instead of the woman's image we saw.

The second picture of Ou sir iez represented a strange being. A man was standing on an extensive, rich pasture, surrounded by many herds eagerly grazing. This strange man was surrounded by a variety of fruit trees, and he looked as if he was eating.



Through these two images the Egyptians depicted, as you yourselves have heard from the mouth of our wise mentor, firstly the primordial origin of the veiled God-being which is the creative one and which nourishes and sustains all creation – while, in the second visible picture, everything that has been created and lives and consumes in all creation is shown.

The proconsul then began to explain to us all using profound words of wisdom, his concept of a sole, everlasting, primordially creative God, and we recognized that there must be an almighty, supreme, exceedingly wise primordial being, which is the source from which all creatures throughout the whole scope of everlasting infinity have originated and by which they are now constantly nourished and sustained.

This primordial God-being cannot be seen or understood by anybody in any way as it fills the whole of infinity and is secretly present everywhere in space as well as in time. That was the reason why the portrait of I-sis was always veiled. Nobody was able or allowed to lift the heavy veil from the image of I-sis except the high priest at certain especially holy times - even he could only raise the lowest hemline in front of the people.

At that time, you obtained an immense respect for the primordial Godhead, and I myself was no less influenced. On the way from Kar nag (not naked, therefore fully dressed, and veiled) to Ko rak (humble like a crab) we spoke about nothing else except the primordial Godhead, and stopping at every tree our mentor explained to us that *the inner being is also shielded from everyone's eyes, like the veiled image of I-sis*. Our amazement and reverence increased with every step taken by the camels on which we rode.

In every aspect of nature, we began to see the enigmatic image of the shrouded and veiled I-sis, and the proconsul took great pleasure in being with us, his black disciples. From Kar nag onwards we looked at everything in nature with completely different eyes than we had before.

Marvelous, profound conversations took place afterwards in our company and with what reverence all our minds were filled when, in our leisure time, we directed our thoughts and our words to the one, eternal primordial Godhead! How often we talked with the good, wise proconsul from Memphis about the unspeakable feeling of bliss we would have if only it were in some way possible just to hear a single word from the supreme Godhead - even if it were only heard very softly but still quite distinctly - in one's heart!"

The Great Rock Temple of Abu Simbel

Ref: "The Great Gospel of John" Vol. 4 Ch 193 by Jakob Lorber

(Oubratouvishar:) "We asked the proconsul, if anything similar had ever happened to any other extremely upright person on this earth.

He shrugged his shoulders and said: 'Directly, most probably never; but there are valid examples of indirect communication both in the scriptures and in stories handed down by word of mouth from generation to generation, that very upright and devout people,



having entered a state of rapture, saw God's Spirit as a light penetrating the innermost recesses of all infinity and they perceived that they themselves were part of this light. However, all those blessed in this way confessed that they were overcome by an intensely joyful feeling in the presence of this light. They began to prophesy, and their prophecies always came to pass. However, no mortal has ever seen the true primordial God in another guise!

Man wishes to bring his primordial God closer to himself in a limited way. His heart's desire is to see the Creator in approachable human form and to converse with Him, the everlasting primordial spirit, as if he were a person. However, that is nothing but the foolish desire of weak-minded mankind, which is in a certain way forgivable, but can never be realized. *The finite can never become infinite - nor the infinite, finite!*

This is what our wise mentor said to us, and we understood his words as well as our limited comprehension would permit.

Nevertheless, despite everything, a process began spontaneously within each of us in which a powerful divine personality began to develop as we felt too lost in God's infinity and could not confidently find our way forward. Our hearts longed for a personal God who could be seen and loved, while our minds always declared war on our poor hearts which felt much too inadequate to embrace divine

infinity with all our love, even though the proconsul advised us to love the primordial Godhead.

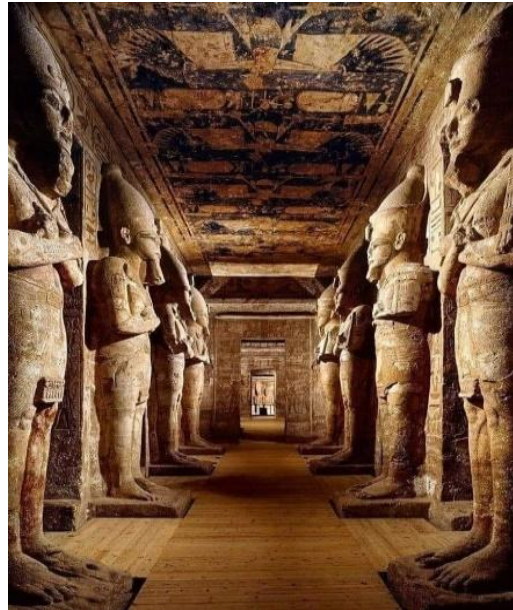
Our mentor also told us that there was a nation on earth called the Jews. This nation was said to have the best concept of the supreme Godhead. One of the first of their wise men, an Egyptian by birth named *Moi ie sez* (Moses - which means: 'my foundling', a name given to him by a princess when she rescued him from the Nile), had conversed with the spirit of God over a period of fifty years. God's spirit strictly forbade him ever to make an image of Him in any way! This wise man at one stage expressed a heart-felt desire to see God in person but received the answer, '*You cannot look on God and live!*'

Nevertheless, when the desire within the heart of the wise man became more insistent, the spirit of God instructed him to hide in a cave and come forward if he was called. *The wise man did that and when he heard his name he came out and saw in the distance the back of God's body shining more brightly than a thousand suns! His own face then began to shine so brightly, that no man could look at him for seven years without going blind. For this reason, **Moses** was obliged to hide his face behind a thick veil at all times. As you know, the very wise proconsul told us all this.* [Ref: In Exodus 33:18-23, Moses requests to see God's glory, and God allows him to see His back, emphasizing the limitations of human perception of the divine.]

To what extent was all this true or not, we would not know how to judge. We only know that an untrue word never passed the lips of the proconsul. The way he heard it is precisely the way he passed it on to us.

You know that, when we asked him where in the whole of Egypt, the true, eternal primordial Godhead had ever been worshipped and in all probability greatly revered, he replied: 'Not very far from here – to be precise it was in the **Great Rock Temple of Abu Simbel** (which means: 'I was, I am and I will be')! You enter through a wide high gateway which leads to a cavernous inner hall. This is adorned with columns carved from the rock. Between each pair of columns an armed colossus stands at least as tall as twelve men and appears to support the weight of the temple ceiling. (66 ft tall)

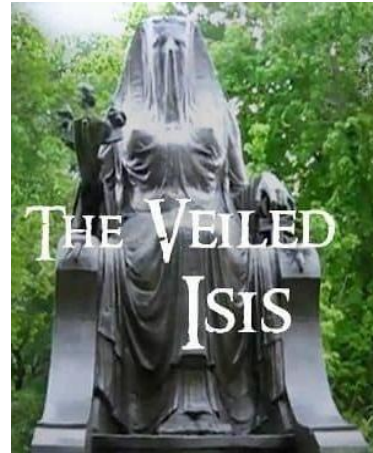
The interior is divided by an arch into three halls and in each of them on both sides there stand seven of these colossi – a total of fourteen giants in each of the three halls. ***They symbolize the seven spirits of God – (the Spirit of Wisdom, the Spirit of Understanding, the Spirit of Counsel, the Spirit of Might (Power), the Spirit of Knowledge, and the Spirit of the Fear of the Lord). In its three sections the hall houses six times seven of these colossi. This shows that even from the beginning of all creation, God set down **six periods of time** or ages and that in each of these endlessly long and always overlapping ages, the same seven spirits have always supported everything with their influence spreading throughout the universe. Each of the six sides of the three sections of the temple hall is engraved***



with all kinds of signs and figures, decipherable by a seer steeped in the ancient wisdom that the spirit of God revealed to the primordial wise men in this country.

At the end of the three halls the veiled image of I-sis is again to be found, the open portrait of Ou-sir-iez, and, on the altar in front of the Isis, the following words are engraved in the hard rock: Abu Simbel!

The image of the Veil of Isis has persisted through the centuries from ancient Egyptian Isis—where Athena and Isis were identified as one— to the present day. Originally, a symbol of wisdom, initiation, and the Mysteries, it has successively become an image of protection, of the secrets of nature, of hidden history and truths to be revealed. In each historical context the Veil is an invitation to delve further into the truths which have been hidden in plain sight from the eyes of those who will not see. *"No mortal was ever able to lift the hem of the mysterious garment worn by the everlasting Godhead."*



On each side of the entrance to the temple gate, there are two giants in a sitting position, and they represent the four main elemental forces of God in nature (Earth, Water, Fire and Air). The fact that they are seated indicates an ordered rest position, in which they have been placed by God to serve all creatures according to the will of God.



An inscription above the gate reminds the visitor that this is a holy place and that he should always enter the sacred halls with a well-disciplined spirit. Anyone entering the first hall will find the first pillars engraved with quite strange symbols and figures and these are said to make reference to some kind of worldwide war under the words 'God's wars.'

However, I myself am not sufficiently well versed in the wisdom of times past to be able to put forward any furthermore profound explanation! In seven days, I will lead you there and you can see all this with your own eyes. Of course, the sharp tooth of time has damaged many aspects of this ancient sanctuary but most of it is still quite well preserved, and you will still be able to learn a great deal from the visit!

Now, what feelings then began to gain ground in us! We could hardly wait for the day on which the proconsul would lead us to the holy place he had described. When finally, the day arrived and we hurried there on our camels, our hearts began to glow more and more, the nearer we came to the outer temple, which was said to be merely the grave of a few ancient seers. How our hearts then pounded when we reached the **Great Rock Temple!** What an indescribably deep impression *the four statues (66 ft tall) depicting the elemental forces* made and were we not speechless when we entered the halls carrying our burning torches? Why did all this affect us so powerfully? The reason is that, in that place, we thought ourselves to be closer to the supreme, true Godhead than anywhere else in Memphis.

When we left the marvelous temple with much weeping and sighing and after our mentor had told us something of the history of the earth in primordial times, we were so moved by all this, that we immediately then began to regard the whole earth as a large temple of God! Whether some days were hot and others cooler, we did not notice as our minds were too fully occupied with anything which might bring the primordial spirit of God closer to us. Yet we still completely missed the point. We certainly knew a great deal then, but I-sis remained hidden and veiled. ***No mortal was ever able to lift the hem of the mysterious garment worn by the everlasting Godhead.***

The Origin of the Abu Simbel Temple – first and second pearl

The Sphinx and the Pillars of Memnon as represented by the hieroglyphics on the first two pearls. Ref: "The Great Gospel of John" Vol. 4 Ch 202 by Jakob Lorber

His companions said however: "How can you have arranged anything with the Lord, when you have not exchanged a single word with Him?!"

The leader said: "Here, in His presence, everything emanates from Him, and we therefore only deal with Him, even if we are negotiating with His disciples!" - They were content with this answer and were then silent.

A few of them did however say to the angel: "Listen, amazing young man, would it not be possible for you also to bring here the quite unusual treasures owned by the five of us which we too keep hidden in our huts?"

The angel said: "Just pick them up under the table near your feet and we shall see what they amount to!"

The five Moors look underneath the table and to their immense surprise they see their very familiar, rather large bundles, and lift them onto the table. Another four heavy lumps of gold appear, together weighing over a hundred pounds, while in the fifth bundle seven fairly large river boulders are revealed, specimens which Marcus, who was standing next to the angel, thought were completely worthless.

The angel said however: "Just wait, soon you will discover that these seven stones are of immense, even incalculable value in worldly terms! Bring me a solid iron hammer, and we will examine them!"

Marcus, full of curiosity himself, hurries to his workshop and soon reappears with a solid iron hammer which he hands over. The angel takes up one of the stones in his hand and strikes it carefully several times causing the whitish, silica-like crust to break away revealing a pearl the size of a human head. Everyone present is absolutely astonished.

On the surface of this amazing pearl, hieroglyphics and other symbols were engraved, including quite a good drawing of the temple Abu Simbel during its construction just when the four gigantic figures had been completed after a hundred and seventy years of sweaty toil and many sacrifices. People still were working assiduously on the facades, sculpturing, and engraving gigantic inscriptions and symbols into the smooth broad surfaces. At this time, they were beginning to create the gate situated between the gigantic figures. Anyone able to decipher these symbols and scriptures, which were clearly visible, had the story of the origin of this temple in his hands and could also see the reason why it was build there by the ancient Egyptians, which was to be near the river Nile.

This pearl therefore does not only have an incalculable value as a giant specimen, but it also has a historic value as it originates from an era many thousands of years before the first human being walked on this earth in the flesh.

During the time on earth when gigantic crustaceans lived in the water, huge waves from the world's seas were still flooding over the majority of the low-lying countries in Africa. *The ancient Egyptians found the mother shell when they dug the foundations of the first pyramids and when they pried it open, they found these seven pearls in it, one of which the angel has now freed from its incrustation.*

Naturally, the angel was now inundated with questions, and he explained the circumstances briefly.

When Raphael had finished his naturally very superficial explanation of the **first pearl**, he said: "All that you need to know for the time being, I have briefly explained to you as clearly as possible. Let us now move on to reveal the second pearl which is somewhat smaller than the first!"

The angel then took the **second pearl** and freed it in the same way from its incrustation as the first one. It was also covered with symbols and inscriptions. On one of the most polished surfaces the little temple of Abu Simbel was engraved and next to it there was a head similar to that of the great Sphinx. And the angel was again implored to explain all the symbols and inscriptions.

The angel said: "My friends, unless the spirit within his soul is in a perfect state of awareness not one person currently living will be able to interpret everything that is written or engraved on this pearl!"

Although this pearl is as old as the first larger pearl, it was only engraved and inscribed about a hundred years later. That was just at the time when the smaller rock temple was completed while, on the other hand, the interior of the larger temple was still unfinished. Therefore, the representation of the smaller temple shows construction to be complete.

The head represents the man who was already the seventh shepherd king at the time and who gave himself the name Shivin (wrongly 'Sphinx'), 'the lively one' 'the entrepreneur'. He had almost reached the age of three hundred and his colossal head was chiseled from a large granite rock which can even today still be seen in quite a good state of preservation.



[**Note:** What happened to the broken nose of the Sphinx? Several theories but the one that interested me was that the reason for the broken nose was because it represented a black person's nose which would have suggested that the ancient Egyptians worked with the black Nubian people who were descendants of Cain!]

[2024 DNA Evidence Of Egypt's Black Pharaohs \(Not Taught In Schools\) - YouTube](#)

This Sphinx initiated major improvements in the schools as well as in dairy farming and in agriculture. He was also revered by his people almost as a god. The symbols and inscriptions illustrate the many good things and improvements which he introduced to this country with his extremely fertile mind.

He did not start to hew out the large temple as that work had already been done by two of his ancestors who were very much devoted to the invisible spirit of God (Angels). However, out of his great respect for them, he had them sculpted on a colossal scale in a sitting position on a rocky cliff face not far from the great temple on a beautiful plain near the Nile, to serve as an everlasting memorial to them. As the two of them had no names and their modesty forbade them from wishing to carry names, he nevertheless called them 'The Nameless Ones' (*Me maine oni*, = badly translated in later times: 'Memnon'). Both the sculptured columns or colossi are still quite well preserved and very visible to this day."



The leader says: "Yes, yes, we have seen and admired all these things! But how old would all these extraordinary monuments be?"

The angel says: "*Nearly three thousand years have elapsed, and the passage of the next three thousand years will not completely obliterate all traces of them!* - Just wait a little and we will now reveal the third pearl. On its surface, next to Sch Sphinx ivinz' two ancestors represented as statues, you will see other important engravings which will give you serious cause to reflect!"

The Secret of the Third Pearl - The Seven Giants and the Sarcophagus

Ref: "The Great Gospel of John" Vol. 4: Ch 203 by Jakob Lorber

Raphael now took the third pearl in his hand and removed its crust.



When it was uncovered, Raphael drew the attention of the onlookers, who were excited and consumed by their thirst for knowledge, to the quite clearly engraved colossi of Memnon and said: "Look, there they are already, the two Nameless Ones! Above them and in the foreground, you can however see a depiction of seven gigantic, robed figures of humans, surrounded by many tiny human shapes! What did the wise Sphinx, who himself inscribed all the pearls, intend us to understand from this?

Listen carefully! It was at about the same time, some one hundred and seven years before the reign of the first of the two 'nameless' forefathers, that a large planet in deep space was fragmented into many pieces with the approval of the Lord. Many people of gigantic proportions lived on it.

As a result of this sudden cataclysm, which was not foreseen although its coming had often previously been foretold to these people, it so happened that seven of these earthlings landed in upper Egypt in several open places throughout that large country and the heavy impact caused a major earth tremor.

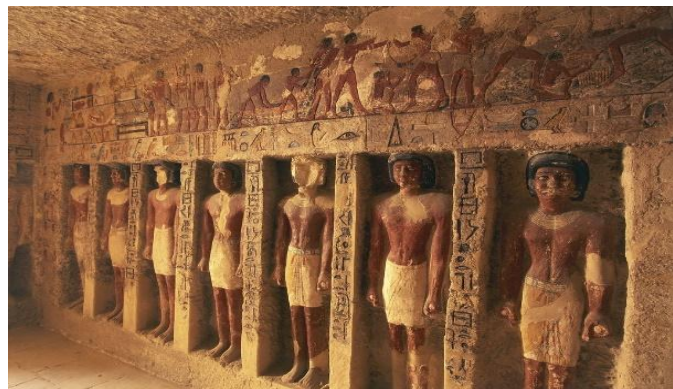
This human rain lasted for more than ten days, which was the period from the first to the last of these impacts. The inhabitants of this country had to endure considerable anxiety and were greatly shocked; especially at night, when they were terrified that one of the giants would fall on them and totally obliterate them. It was therefore with fear in their hearts that they looked constantly skywards to see whether another uninvited guest from the clouds would pay them a very unwelcome visit.



For nearly ten years they posted a permanent watch to see whether another gruesome traveler might land in their midst but after ten days there were no more. In time the people calmed down, and they even dared to approach the giant, completely desiccated, corpses which were scattered over a wide area and lay several hours' walk away from each other.

The seers among those ancient Egyptians deduced quite correctly that these were giants from a large, distant country who were being punished by the spirit of God because they must have sinned against Him. God in His just anger was said to have picked them up and hurled them here, just to show the Egyptians that He does not spare even the most mighty giants if their actions are contrary to His will. *In short, they finally began to burn the bodies piece by piece and fifty years later there was no longer any evidence of the giant visitors.*

However, the Egyptians' remembrance of these gigantic human figures caused them to regard everything in colossal terms as they were influenced by the image of these giants imprinted on their minds and their first sculptures were more than tangible proof of this.



In the temple of Abu Simbel, in each of its three divisions, seven giants were shown as supporting the roof to some extent and they were chiseled into the stone, notably wearing the garments in which the travelers fell from the skies. The Egyptians, who had previously walked around almost completely naked, started to dress in the same manner - which is the reason why even nowadays we see the remains of their ancestors dressed in this way. Their mummies and sarcophagi are full of this kind of adornment."

The leader asks about the true significance of the sarcophagi (a stone coffin) to the ancient Egyptians and why they gave this one name to both larger and smaller versions of these heavy coffins.

Raphael says: "This you will hear right now and in some detail! You know that in large areas of this country it is not so easy to bury corpses as, in dry ground, a body decomposes very slowly and therefore does not begin to rot. In the moister ground near the Nile, they wisely did not wish to bury the dead and thus pollute the river. The alternatives of just putting the corpses on the ground or throwing them to wild animals as food were both unacceptable especially to the ancient Egyptians who were much too civilized and respected even the corpses of their dead brothers too much to treat them so disrespectfully. But what else could they do?

They then had a very clever idea! They hewed from stone, sometimes very large but later also very small coffins, in which there was comfortably enough space to accommodate one, two or at most three corpses. Each coffin was provided with a relatively large and heavy lid. When one or more corpses had been placed in a coffin, after the skin had been rubbed thoroughly with mum (Muma, also mummy, = earth resin, earth balsam), the lid was heated until it glowed and the coffin was then covered 'for all time', in a manner of speaking, with this glowing hot lid. Using this process the corpses completely dried out and with very large, well-heated lids they were sometimes charred or completely burned to ash.

However, in the bigger towns and communities there were also communal coffins, which were opened every seven years. They were then gradually re-filled with corpses and completely enclosed, and a substantial fire was ignited on top of the lid with the result that the corpses were of course reduced to ash. When one of these coffins was full of ash, it was not opened again but was left to stand as a respectful reminder of the transitory nature of everything on earth.

In time vaults and pyramids were built around and above them and this is the reason why many of these coffins are still to be found today in the vicinity of the pyramids in sometimes very narrow and sometimes very wide vaulted chambers (Kai-tu comba, which means hidden chamber). These coffins which have now been described to you in detail were then called sarcophagi, as in the tongue of the ancient Egyptians, sarko means 'glowing' and vaga (vascha) means 'heavy lid'.

These then are your sarcophagi; but now let us proceed to the fourth pearl and see what secrets it must reveal to us!"

And now let us look at our exposed Fourth Pearl!

There we see several illustrations of hunters with quivers, bows and arrows and a large herd surrounded by lions. This signifies the major problem which the Egyptians had in combating the lions which were at that stage attacking the large number of rich herds owned by the Egyptians.



Look more to the right of this scene and you will see the pastures already enclosed with walls on which lie the heads of bulls, some with the horns pointing upwards, some downwards and some sideways, all signifying that the herds, before the large pastures were enclosed, were always in great danger and were completely defenseless. At each corner of the walls you see a large dog, ready to fight, sometimes standing, sometimes lying down. The name given by the ancient Egyptians to this guard dog was Pas, also Pastshier (guardian of the pasture).

Even farther to the right, you again see the shepherd king Shvinn (Sphinx) with a gigantic dog at his side and, in front of the dog, the remains of a lion. More to the right but a little higher up, we see the same dog with images of the sun and the moon below him. What does this mean?

Listen! Our Sphinx was king of the shepherds and had in fact one of the largest dogs. No lion or panther could be sure of escaping him alive. For a long time, this dog protected Sphinx' herds but when the dog died of old age, the king, out of respect and his wish to preserve his memories of him, decided to immortalize his dog by naming a constellation in the southern sky after him. He christened the constellation the Great Dog, in memory of his loyal service in guarding the king's herds for many years. The fact that the king gave his dog a place among the stars is indicated by the sun and the moon positioned underneath the belly of the dog. *Every cluster of stars under which the sun and the moon can be seen serves as a symbolic reminder in the night sky of some great or important event.*



Nowadays a very large, watchful dog - especially in this country where there are almost no ferocious wild animals left - is no longer of special importance, but in ancient Egypt, where there were large packs of rapacious beasts and even in some parts of present-day Egypt where there still are a few, a large, strong, courageous dog was a prime necessity. Firstly, a dog like that was a very loyal guardian of the flocks and herds. His sustenance was very simple to provide as this large canine breed fed on countless mice and they were never in short supply in this land. They also consumed large grasshoppers by the thousand every day. Just once a day they did receive some milk and this gesture ensured that the dogs remained faithful to the herd.

As well as the large dogs, also a race of smaller dogs well accepted by the ancient Egyptians, called Mal pas (small dog). These were the noisy ones as Porosit means in their ancient tongue 'alarm or noise maker'. If any intruder came close to a house or a herd, the small dogs began to bark which alerted the large ones so that they then filled the air with intense barking. The wild animals respected them and promptly left the scene.

Quite often small dogs also guarded the poultry and their chicks, a task for which they were specially trained. Poultry-keeping was an innovation of Sphinx who domesticated the birds, showing the Egyptians how tasty their meat and their grilled or boiled eggs were. In this way he taught the already very large population about new foods and species, whose roasted meat and eggs tasted very good - otherwise there would not have been a 'chicken war' later - this was even mentioned by the Greek historian Herodotus in a mythical way.

Our Sphinx, who immortalized the great dog in the skies, also gave the Little Dog a place among the stars, giving it the name Porishion (Procyon). Close by you also find the old Kokla (lucky hen); later this constellation received the name Peleada, also Peleadza, and based on a Greek fable was given the name **Pleiades** by the Greeks. (The seven sisters)



Here at the very top of the pearl you can see the detail quite well engraved, and you can consequently judge how intelligent our Sphinx was. It was not his main purpose to remind his followers constantly about his dogs and chickens using easily recognizable constellations but rather to teach them to use the stars to measure the passage of time.

It was also Sphinx who at Dia Daira (Diaethria) set down the first zodiac (Sa diazc = for the workers), he was the first to discover it in the firmament and gave the constellations names according to currently visible phenomena or events taking place in his country at a particular time - as we shall soon see revealed when we examine the fifth pearl!"

Raphael explains the Constellations on the Fourth Pearl.

Ref: "The Great Gospel of John" Vol. 4: Ch 204 by Jakob Lorber

The angel carefully the angel picks it up in his hand and removes the incrustation.

At that moment the leader asks the angel: "Young miracle worker, in your capacity as the hands-on servant of the Almighty, please do not be annoyed if I burden you with a question! Considering your miraculous power in other respects, I am troubled by the hammer! Is it absolutely necessary or are you using it only to reveal yourself to us in a more natural way so that we can watch and listen to you more fearlessly and calmly?"

The angel replies: "Neither of these reasons - I only do this to show you how to handle stones like these if you should chance to find any and wish to reveal their secrets! Especially in upper and middle Egypt these encrusted stones are to be found in large numbers over wide stretches of the desert, but there will of course only be few pearls like these hidden in them. However, other stones too may be decorated with all manner of signs, inscriptions and illustrations as the old Egyptians still did not have paper to write on for a long time. Therefore, they used

stone tablets, initially engraving them with bone tools and later with iron styluses, all kinds of material they wished to commit to memory.

The very first drawings of course only recorded very simple facts concerning their flocks and herds; but the latter one's record, like these pearls, great and significant events affecting not only this large country and its people but also the whole world. The Lord wished it offer suitable preparatory background for His Coming and this is also the reason why He sent His most favored chosen people, the Hebrews, to Egypt for long-term instruction. Moses, the great prophet of the Lord, completed his schooling at the Horn of the Kahi (Kahiro), in Thebes (Thebai, also Thebsai, = house of fools, later of course a large, populous city), in Kar nag at Korak and in the oldest cities like Memphis, Diaethria (Dia दौर = place of work) and Elephantine (EL ei fanti = the descendants of the children of God) and was led by the spirit of God to his ordination at Madan over the Suez at the late age of fifty-seven, while fleeing from a cruel Varion (Pharaoh). You can read about his later history in the scriptures.

In a word, Egypt was destined by God to become a preparatory school. The inhabitants of this, the oldest inhabited land on earth, were already endowed from ancient times with considerable wisdom and they traded and dealt with nearly all the more advanced nations in the world. You will now therefore understand how and why and particularly in this country, everything which is found here very often has a very deep-rooted significance.

The Divisions of Time on the Fifth Pearl

Ref: "The Great Gospel of John" Vol. 4: Ch 205 by Jakob Lorber

(Raphael:) "Just pay attention; here is the fifth pearl! I have already shown you how these ancient relics should be handled and how they should be removed from their crust. I therefore intend to reveal the last three pearls just by using my willpower. Look! - The fifth pearl is already revealed to us!

Look here at the zodiac of Diaethria as it is engraved on the pearl's most polished and most expansive surface! There is a colossal temple; 365 massively dimensioned columns carry an equally massive arch of reddish granite ashlars, constructed most skillfully with great precision and very strongly in accordance with the best building practice. The highest point on the arch is at a height equivalent to sixty-six men. The whole arch has exactly 365 apertures, which are so precisely positioned that during a period of dominance of any one constellation where the sun is present that its light falls precisely at midday onto the center line of a column standing vertically in the center of the temple. The light coming through the other apertures also fell onto the altar at different times during the day, but it did not pass cut the center line, being one or more degrees to one side or the other.



This most meaningfully constructed arch still stands, although somewhat ravaged by the tooth of time. It will stand for a long time and serve astronomers with its guidelines.

You ask: What actual use did the great Sphinx have in mind when he built this arch with the utmost precision in the world? – Previously there had been no system for keeping time. The small difference in shorter or longer days was hardly noticed. The moon was still the most reliable timekeeper. In Diaethria, the town where the workers became lethargic due to hard discipline, it was necessary to have a reliable time-keeping system both day and night. Our Sphinx made this arch for that purpose and to ensure an orderly way of life. It did, however, take him ten years and a hundred thousand workers to complete.

The arch was of course very wide and at intervals of every 30 or 31 round apertures the symbol of one of the twelve-star signs was painted on it normally in red. Above each, the constellation was faithfully depicted at the top in white. You can see here on the pearl that the internal outline of the arch has been clearly and finely engraved then rubbed with a dark red color. You can now just imagine what an energetically motivated spirit our Sphinx was and the unlimited respect the peoples of Egypt had for him! In consequence, he only had to make a signal and hundreds of thousands of people would begin to busy themselves. The most extraordinary work was then raised from the ground as if by magic!

The wise people in the nation he made into teachers and priests. He established schools everywhere to teach all subjects which were useful to people in their work and their ambitions. The supreme scholarship of divinity could, however, only be undertaken in Kar nag at Korak and finally, in secrecy, the ultimate test, at Abu Simbel."

Then the old innkeeper Marcus asked the angel, interrupting his explanation: "Dearest friend, while you are in full flow explaining your pearls, could you not also tell us the strange background to the Sphinx which, half woman and half animal, gave mankind on pain of life or death its famous riddle – namely, which animal is it that walks in the morning on all fours, at midday on two feet and in the evening on three? A man who could not solve the riddle was slain by the sphinx; while, on the other hand, someone who could solve it was allowed to kill the sphinx! - Is there any part of this that is in fact true or not?"

The Sixth Pearl- depictions of the pyramids, the obelisks, and the Sphinx

Ref: "The Great Gospel of John" Vol. 4: Ch 206 by Jakob Lorber

Raphael says: "Look at this, the sixth pearl here will answer your question! Here we have it fully revealed; what do you see when you first look at it?"

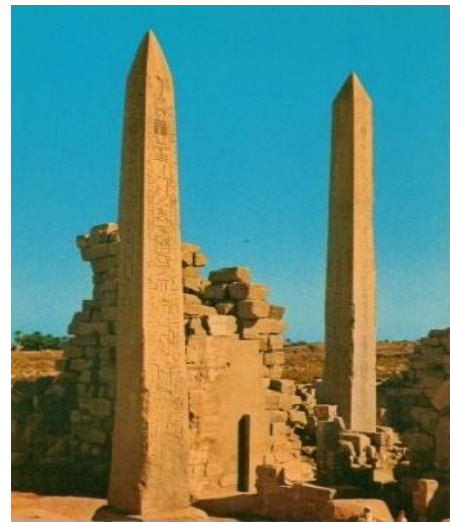
Marcus says: "Again I see the colossal image of Sphinx and some pyramids. In front of the most imposing of there are two-pointed columns, called obelisks. At the side of the great pyramid, in reality perhaps a few hundred paces away from it – impossible to determine precisely from the engraving – there is again a quite colossal statue to be seen. It has the head and hands of a woman, as well as well-defined female breasts. Where the chest ends at the stomach, the indistinct body of an animal begins. Behind this strange statue there is an extended circular wall enclosing the whole vast meadow. It appears to form a complete integral unit. - What does all this mean?"



Raphael says: "The colossal image with breasts represents the very same Sphinx, which the people, to honor their great benefactor, erected of their own initiative using the best stonemasons and builders and also at their own very considerable cost. *The great pyramid with the two obelisks bore the teaching - 'Man, know thyself!'*. The interior had large chambers and long passages running in all directions, which contained all kinds of odd devices to facilitate self-knowledge and, as a result, a true appreciation of the supreme spirit of God. Sometimes these devices looked quite gruesome, but they very rarely missed the mark. The other pyramids are mainly only signposts to the underground places containing many sarcophagi, these were permanently walled off, as was explained earlier.

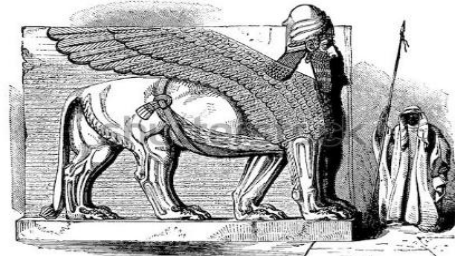
Built at that time, however, there are still many pyramids and all kinds of temples along the exceedingly long Nile valleys, which were built very much later by the Pharaohs during the time of Abraham, Isaac and Jacob. These are not recorded here, only those which were built under Sphinx rule.

Pyramidal was the original ancient name and means: 'Give me wisdom!' and the **two-pointed columns called obelisks** signify that 'the pure seek to find the exalted, the beautiful and the pure'. 'Belo' actually means 'white' but, because the completely white color signified for the ancient Egyptians 'pure, exalted and beautiful', its use was also intended to indicate 'exaltation, purity and beauty'.



The positive influence of these schools soon became known over a wide area and foreigners began to attend them. There were so many strangers that they could not be accommodated and supplied with their needs. As a result, our Sphinx, towards the end of his reign, hatched an ominous plan to keep the foreigners away and ensure that fewer of them would attend the schools he had established. But what was his method?

Here on this pearl, you see the half-person, half-animal statue. It was hollow and inside it a man could climb a spiral staircase, enter the head, and speak loudly and clearly through its funnel-shaped mouth, which was directed downwards. The strength of the voice was such that it seemed in all seriousness as if the colossal statue could talk.



www.shutterstock.com - 1381974437

Now when the foreigners came there to be accepted into the school, they were directed by a servant to stand, one by one, at a certain place in front of the statue, which was said to be dead on the outside but alive on the inside. Everyone who wanted to become a disciple of the pyramids received a puzzling question about life and death from the exalted Sphinx. If the visitor was able to solve the riddle he was to be accepted and then also allowed to ask the statue a counter-question. If the statue could not give him a satisfactory answer, the visitor was then allowed to destroy it and, so to speak, murder it.

The question was, however, given to each client three days earlier to ponder over. On the third day however, when they received the same question delivered by the mouth of the statue on pain of life and death, it is certain that nobody dared to reply. They all humbly withdrew, paid the fee required and travelled back to their often quite far distant homeland.

Sometime later, as a myth has it, a Greek was successful in solving the old riddle; but for a hundred thousand others this is a fable which deserves no credibility! The famous riddle was solved in fact by Moses, who did not however, destroy the statue as, although it is somewhat ravaged by the passage of time, it can still be seen today.

Of course, the interior design can no longer be inspected as is completely full of sand and mud because the Nile severely breaches its banks normally every hundred years but sometimes even after two centuries have elapsed. The result is that in the narrow canyons the waves rise more than thirty meters above the normal water level. Much land is laid to waste and made infertile as a huge amount of gravel, sand and mud is dumped on top of once beautiful pastures.

After the reign of Sphinx there were two Nile floods when waves covered the peaks of the pyramids. There was a similar flood, 870 years ago, when the temple of Abu Simbel was nearly half hidden in sand and silt with the result that it has since been impossible to cleanse it and some other memorials of all the sand and mud. The same is true of our puzzling statue; on the inside it is full of solidified mud and sand nobody can remove! So, my dear Marcus, that is the truth about the puzzling sphinx! - Are you now clear about it?"

Marcus says: "As the two thousand years passed, did nobody have the courage to allow the sphinx to ask him the prepared question at the risk of his life?"

If he were he to have been asked, what would have happened if he, quite understandably, could not solve the riddle?"

Raphael says: "At the spot where the applicant was standing, there was a pit into which he would quickly fall under the ground. Once at the bottom some servants would have taken him to the school by underground passageways as a reward for his bravery, even though he had not solved the riddle correctly. He would not then escape again until he had been perfected as a person. However, that never happened and at times when the riddle was solved, that ancient escape route silted and sanded up so that it became completely unserviceable. In any case the first shepherd kings and their peoples had long since been defeated by a Phoenician nation so that the pharaohs, even in the time of Abraham, were already Phoenicians.

No more about that. We shall now move on to the seventh and last pearl!"



After the reign of Sphinx there were two Nile floods when waves covered the peaks of the pyramids.

The Constellations on the Seventh Pearl - the collapse of Egyptian culture. The story of the seventh pearl.

Ref: "The Great Gospel of John" Vol. 4: Ch 207 by Jakob Lorber

(Raphael:) "Look, there it is! What do you see on it? - You see something, but you do not know what it is; on this very beautiful pearl all the constellations have been drawn and rubbed with a brownish red pigment. It has been well preserved in its crust until now.

We cannot learn too much from this pearl, which is of great significance, but we can still infer from it that our Sphinx knew the stars in the firmament well and that he was certainly the first to arrange the constellations into a proper system. He also gave names to the signs of the zodiac which are still used to this day!



Before his reign the ancient Egyptians seemed to be quite unskilled in making drawings and writing descriptions. They also lacked self-knowledge and were even more deficient in their knowledge of God. However, our Sphinx made an incredibly forceful effort to bring order into all this and, out of what had previously been a wild nomadic tribe, he created one of the most educated and supremely wise nations on this whole earth, a fact that of course made many other people envious as time went by. Because foreigners were greatly enamored of the extraordinary hold which culture had over that country and its people, everything they saw seemed to be wonderful to them in a heavenly way so that once they had arrived there, they could not bear to leave again.

The more they began to travel to Egypt, the more they settled there. Thus, the early subjugation of the ancient people and their rulers mainly took place quite peacefully.

*Sphinx heirs were increasingly softer and more spoilt people. They lived a life of luxury, sheltered by the fame of their forefathers and to a large degree left the business of governance to its own devices. **The result of this was that soon the immigrants, who were tougher in character, were readily elected by the natives as the leaders chosen to rule over them - all of this without bloodshed.***

To some extent this was all well and good, but the native peoples did not gain any great advantage from this change as the foreign rulers ('varion'; badly translated pharaohs) very soon became militant and true tyrants in oppressing the people. Only a few people had access to the schools and the lessons still being taught there were a far cry from earlier teachings. This was also the reason why the former purity of truth developed into the most absurd idolatry shrouded by impenetrable darkness obscuring the ancient culture of the country so that - even for men of great wisdom - it was hardly to be found any more.

The reason why these seven pearls are of such incalculable value is that they originate from an era when Egypt had reached the peak of its spiritual development. It is therefore impossible to cherish them too highly!"

One of the Moors asks how it happened that these pearls ended up being lost in the sands of the river Nile.

Raphael says: "I have already told you how the Nile at certain times floods catastrophically! About 567 years after the Sphinx the level of our river rose to an inexplicable height, in narrow places reaching more than one hundred and sixty meters above its normal maximum! All the cities at the bottom of valleys were completely inundated for five weeks and it was then that the pearls, including the buildings where they were kept, were swept away by the force of the waves, and were buried by sand and mud of the same kind as the blocks from which the buildings had been constructed.

During the period of nearly three thousand years when they were buried in the sand, they became incrustated as you first saw them. I removed the crusty shells, initially in quite a normal way and later in a miraculous manner which is only possible for me.

Now you also know this, and you have in these seven pearls seven books, which can now and for all time offer you quite a complete description of this country which is also partly inhabited by you yourselves. Therefore, keep them safe as each of these pearls is worth much more than a vast kingdom!

For the time being Oubratouvishar, as the wisest one in your company, should have them in his safekeeping. When he departs this world, he must choose someone who is worthy of protecting this incalculable treasure. Woe to any unworthy scoundrel who tries to acquire them for himself out of avarice!

I, as the messenger and executor of the will of the One seated there, (Jesus) believe I have performed enough miracles to strengthen your belief. If they are not enough, nothing further could ever suffice! *Do you now believe that it is that One (Jesus) sitting there in whose name the great Sphinx and his two ancestors (Angels) built the vast Rock Temple at Abu Simbel?*



All of them say; "Yes, yes, yes, your miracle worker and messenger of the Lord, we confirm our belief with our lives and with the utmost conviction!"

With that the angel left them and Cyrenius asked Me if this quite factual history of Egypt were also a necessary feature of the gospel coming from My mouth.

I said to Him: "One of the most important! After a few centuries all kinds of investigators will appear and research every aspect of this land. They will find many things which Raphael spoke about. This will confuse them a great deal, just as it would also greatly confuse you and even your offspring. This completely true revelation will however point you in the right direction. At some time in the future, I will again inspire followers to reveal these ancient riddles to people of an inquiring mind. - But now we ourselves must go over to them and give them the true gospel from the heavens." . . .

["I Found Out Who REALLY Built The Pyramids And I Brought Proof" Graham Hancock Leaves World STUNNED](#)

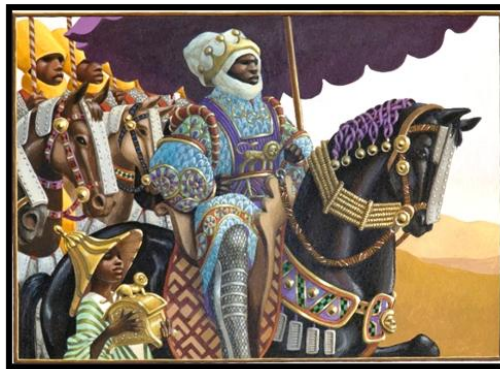
For even this knowledge would just be misconstrued intellectual information since only love is the key to realization and without love everything will remain incomprehensible, which is reflected in this video since the said information will not be believed because it cannot be realized as long a person's thinking is not illuminated by love.

Jesus will now reveal the mystery of how the Pyramids were built. Let's continue our journey:

Moors as examples of true Primordial Humanity

Ref: "The Great Gospel of John" Vol. 4 Ch 210 by Jakob Lorber

Note: Moors are descendants of Cain not Noah



Jesus is speaking to the Moors: "I shall address many words to you, not just a few! I will not give you any new laws, merely reaffirm the old ones, which I Myself, at the beginning of your time on earth, engraved indelibly in your hearts.

In truth, I principally came into this world to guide mankind - which had completely abandoned all My original ordinances - by means of teachings, examples and deeds, so that it would return to the primordial state in which the first human beings found themselves to be the true masters of all the other creatures.

These people with white skins therefore need My teaching and My deeds so that they can recognize, who He is, their teacher, and what He requires of them. However, you still live in your splendid primordial state. Your school of life begins with the right means in the right place. You start to teach the people initially to be people, choosing what is of prime importance for them to know. In future the white-skinned people must do likewise, and I am now showing them the way to achieve this.

There will however be many difficulties, many teachings and deeds and a long time will pass, before these white people can reach your present level. They are the stray ones, the perverse ones, and the lost souls, who must be rehabilitated again. They are sick and therefore need the skills of a doctor who can cure them.

I could also have come to you, as you are now incomparably better than the white men, but you never required My presence. However, I now need your presence here as proof of My primordial ordinance and I therefore used My will to urge and finally to compel you to come, so that these white men can see what man is and should be in his primordial state.

Therefore, I now ask you to show these people a few examples of your still very real primordial humanity, in order to teach a lesson to these your brothers, many of whom are blind and on the wrong track! There are a few of them who are quite near to perfection but not one of them has developed as a man to a degree which makes him comparable to the least perfect one in your community! - Out of love for Me, will you do this?"

Oubratouvishar says: "Oh Lord, Your love, benevolence and mercy already fill all those gaps in infinite space in which new creations will praise Your most holy name in profound humility, but only after eternities have elapsed. What do You wish us to do in humble obedience to Your holy will? Anything! Oh Lord, just give us Your instructions!"

I reply: "Now then, first show us your primordial control over water as an element and walk on its surface as if on firm, dry ground, as well as your great agility on wet grass!"

Immediately the leader called upon his coal-black companions, some sixty of them, and asked Me, if they would suffice. I agreed and sixty people of both genders went to the sea and continued to walk on its surface as they had on dry land. Finally, they demonstrated some speed exercises and sped around so quickly on the quite calm surface that a swallow diving down at high speed would not have caught up with them. Within a few moments they were so far away from us that we could not see them any longer. Then within a few moments they arrived back very near to the shore with a noise like a hurricane.

The hair on Cyrenius' head stood up as the sixty Nubians hurtled towards the shore as if on skids. They only came to about fifty feet from the beach and stopped suddenly. Only their leader came to me on land breathing easily and asked if there were any other feats I would like to see performed on the water."

The Power of the Moors to Control the element Water.

Ref: "The Great Gospel of John" Vol. 4 Ch 211 by Jakob Lorber

Jesus is speaking: "Only a few things more from your knowledge, for example what do you do on the water when a burning hot wind is blowing and how do you catch fish!"

The leader returns quickly to his sixty companions and tells them My wish. Suddenly they all fall on their faces directly onto the surface of the water, lying there for a few moments like dry wood. Soon they became very restless and, stretching out to their full length, they began to spin very quickly on the axes of their bodies.

(The Lord:) "They do this to ensure that all their body parts are suitably moistened at all times so that they are not burned or even reduced to ashes by the fiery wind, the Kamb'sim ('where should I flee to?'); since the Kamb'sim (also Kam beshim = 'where do I flee to now?') is by far the hottest wind in the deserts of Nubia and Abyssinia. The 'Samun' (for 'pitch' = the wind melts pitch in the ground) is not nearly as hot as the Kamb'sim. Even less hot is the 'Giroukou' (the south-easterly wind blowing over the pastures), since the wind coming over the great pastures or 'Giri', which lie precisely in that direction in relation to Memphis, already bore that name from ancient times. However, both these winds, not the Kamb'sim, were so hot that people sheltered in the dampness of the caves.

The ritual they are now showing you, they only perform during the Kamb'sim. If it continues to blow for a long time or increases in intensity, only then will they begin to dive beneath the surface, as they are demonstrating now. However, they can never stay under water for too long, since their strong inner and outer life spheres make the specific gravity of their bodies lighter than that of the water.

They are now sitting on the water and in this position, they will show us how they catch fish! Look how they use their strong willpower to attract fish from far away towards them! They then lift them by hand out of the water and place them according to their needs into their open aprons, which they always wear around their loins, and, remaining in the seated position, they will quickly return to us on shore. Their sails and their oars only exist in their minds. As soon as they are required to make some quick movement on the water, they wish for it with their undoubtedly steadfast belief, and everything happens as they want it to happen!

Look, they now have finished fishing and will travel in the seated position over the sea and will reach the shore with the speed of an arrow! See how they are now setting off and arriving on the shore! They are quickly standing up and bringing their catch here to us.

Marcus, ask your sons to look after the many very fine fish and put them in water, not to let them go bad!"

When the black people come to us with their aprons full of living fish, Marcus himself leads them to a fish tank where they unload their fish, several hundreds of them. After that they again quickly returned to Me.

The leader immediately addresses the white people present as follows: "This feat, my white brothers, that we have just performed – does it appear to you to be totally strange that has never seen before? However, we are very simple people of nature and everything we have just shown you on the water before your eyes is very natural to us in the same way that seeing, hearing, smelling, and feeling are to you.

The perverse man already hardened in his soul will also become much heavier physically and his body is like a stone which does not float on water because it is heavier. We, however, are like wood within which the innermost spirits of life are already much freer than those of stone which are still burdened by severe judgement.

Pay attention, let a man with a mature soul come here, one who should not however have ever felt any arrogance or power-hungry self-love stir in his breast. If he enters the water, I will guarantee that he will not sink! Place next to him a power-crazed and very self-loving person on the liquid element and he will sink like a stone! If he were to be very fat, however - which is rarely the case with very self-loving people - then the fat would keep at least two thirds of his body afloat above the water, but this assumes he would be really obese. However, if his flesh is in a normal state, he will sink like a stone.

With us, water is regarded as a good test for the genuine honesty of a person's mind. If the water will not support a man properly, his soul has most probably suffered some damage. The element will not then be favorable towards him and provide him with the necessary service. As we have moved with obvious facility on top of the water and have also shown that the animals living in the water have been subservient to us since the very beginning of our existence. Similarly, this was the case with primordial man in his time. For them streams, lakes and even the sea were no obstacles to prevent them walking across the whole world; they did not need ships or bridges. However, you people are often completely swamped by the water as well as your ships and bridges - and not one single mosquito obeys your commands! How far away are you therefore from genuine humanity!

You must have all kinds of weapons to put your enemies to flight while we have never used force. Even today we do not have any other tools than a cutting knife made from bone which we use to make our huts and our clothes in quite a laborious way. Despite this we have never had to walk around naked, and we never complain about it. If we receive essential tools from you to take home, we will use them with neighborly love enhanced by your gift. They will never serve us as weapons, of that you may rest assured!

Now it is your turn to experiment on the water, and show us, how highly competent you already are in your lives!"

This type of language secretly got up the noses of the Romans a little, but they were able to remain in control of their feelings in quite a well-mannered way."

The Dominance of the Moors over Animals

Ref: "The Great Gospel of John" Vol. 4 Ch 212 by Jakob Lorber

The leader asked Me however, whether there was anything else unusual which they should demonstrate to the white people.

I said: "Yes, My dear, old friends! Look up there, about five thousand paces towards the midday sun near the lake, you see a hill which drops off very steeply towards the water. It is infested with very poisonous snakes and adders, and you can chase these beasts away for Me! All of us will accompany you to the spot!"

The leader said: "Almighty Lord! As far as their removal is concern, it will only cost You a single thought and the hill will be free of all vermin for all time. However, if this is also an example of a power with which primordial man is endowed, we shall do this, as we do everything else, in accordance with Your supremely holy will!"

I say: "It is self-evident that I only ask it for the sake of example; therefore proceed!"

We broke up and moved quickly over to the hill I had described, reaching it after half an hour. When we arrived, the quite extensive hill was alive with all the snakes and adders. They began to hiss and whistle almost intolerably so that one could hardly grasp one's own words. All the thousands of these creatures hurried into the sea and swam like arrows over the broad swell of the water. Within a few moments the hill was clear.

The leader came to Me and said: "Lord, all the snakes and adders are gone, from the oldest to the ones most recently hatched from eggs. However, there are still as many unborn ones in their eggs! Who is to remove them from the many holes and hidden nests? If they are not removed, within six months this hill will be covered with them again as it was until now! Who will then cleanse the hill?"

I reply: "Do you have any means to eradicate these too?"

Their leader says: "Except for the *Ich nei maon* ('has no poison') we do not know any other means! One would have to heat up the whole hill for some time, and the effect would be to destroy the nests and eggs by natural means. The better way would of course be Your will or that of Your servant. We only have the option to stay here and suffocate the vermin using the influence of our permanent external lifestyle – but this we cannot do."

I say: "Leave it at that! You have already performed your miracles, and I do not ask any more of you. I will take care of it! As this hill has now been purged of its

evil inhabitants, we will climb up and you will offer us further examples of your abilities as human beings!"

We then climbed the hill which had room for at least 2,000 people on its top. When we reached the top, about a thousand feet above the surface of the water, long lines of cranes took to the skies.

Then I said to the leader: "My friend, are these birds too still submissive to you?"

The leader said: "These are a foreign species we have never seen before. However, I do not have the least doubt that they are also sensitive to our will and will act accordingly."

The leader now looked at his companions and said: "Join with me in your minds so that we can fulfil the wish of the Lord!"

As soon as the leader had spoken these words, the cranes began to descend and were on the hill among the black people in a few moments, but they avoided the white men. Shortly afterwards the leader indicated to the cranes to continue their flight and they flew away.

Now a pair of enormous vultures flew high in the sky and began circling above us.

The leader then said to the white people: "Call these hovering vultures down here!"

Cyrenius replied to the leader: "But why make this request to us - it seems to be a little arrogant? You already know that we spoiled people are not able to perform such primordial human tasks! Just fulfil the will of the Lord; everything else the Lord will take care of as far as possible as we ourselves also will in accordance with his teachings.

The leader says: "Do you really think that I put the request to you white people to call down the two floating vultures above us, motivated by a feeling of self-aggrandizement? Oh, you are quite wrong to have that opinion of me! I put the request to you my white brothers, to remind you more emphatically of your great perversity - for which you are of course finally little or not at all to be blamed - but nevertheless it cannot do you any harm!

How should we be able to sing the praises of our natural attributes?! Do you boast about your vision or your hearing?! If we had been able to take a pride in these traits that seem to you to be so wonderful, we would have lost them long ago. However, as this is an impossibility for us, we still retain these apparently remarkable attributes, proof of which you white people will shortly see! - Come down, you two dwellers in the skies!"

When the leader had finished speaking out quite loudly, the two mighty vultures shot down like arrows and landed gently and clearly in a friendly way on the leader's right hand, just as if they had been properly trained in a menagerie (a strange or diverse collection of people or things).

At that moment a magpie flew by, and the leader instructed one of the vultures to catch it unharmed and bring it to him. Like an arrow the gigantic vulture shot after the fluttering magpie and brought it quickly back to the leader without attempting to fly off. The vulture was holding the screeching magpie firmly in its claws without harming it, however, and only released his grip when its master took hold of it. The leader then stroked the two vultures and released them too and the

two large birds of prey quickly rose high into the air and went off to search out a succulent victim to gorge themselves on.

The magpie, however, was given to Cyrenius by the black leader as a reminder of an event which appeared to be rather wonderful to the governor and the other Romans or Jews.

Cyrenius handed the magpie to his two daughters, who were also present, for them to care for it and said to Me: "But Lord, it is absolutely fabulous what these black people are capable of – provided that Your will did not secretly play a small part in all this?!"

I replied: "I said to you before, that I would let them carry on completely on their own! Why do you doubt this now? Just have patience and I will have them do a few other things which will make you feel quite faint!"

The Control Exercised by the Moors over Plant Life and the Elements.

Ref: "The Great Gospel of John" Vol. 4 Ch 213 by Jakob Lorber

Then I call again to Oubratouvishar, saying to him: "Show us now, how much you are familiar with the air and its power as in the beginning it was given to man in his pure state to rule also over the spirits of the air, so that they would assist him in any circumstances, in which he would need their services! Show us therefore to what degree you are still blessed with this attribute from primordial life!"

Immediately the leader called over ten of his most reliable companions and instructed them to form a circle round him with each man's right foot covering the left foot of his neighbor and with their hands outstretched towards him. This was done immediately, and our leader began to twist around, then rose upwards and floated completely off the ground and about the height of a tall man in the air.

In this position he asked me if he should go even higher, or if this was sufficient proof.

I said: "That is sufficient, please come back down!"

Immediately the ten left their circle and the leader quickly returned to ground level again, bowed deeply before Me and asked if he should show Me anything more.

I said: "How do you uproot trees and move large rock clusters from the spot?"

The leader said: "Lord, our country has a significant shortage of big strong trees and only the higher mountains are blessed with them. On the high-altitude pastures which the Kamb'sim cannot reach and on which our herds graze, we sometimes find old Bohahania trees which normally serve as a habitat for the apes. Here and there we also find cypress, myrrh, wild dates, and buck- and chicken-bread. That is already the complete list of the trees which grow in our country.

On the plains and in the remote windy corners of our country, only noble dates, figs, the ouraniza (orange) and the semenza (seed- filled apples or pomegranates) and several useful perennial shrubs grow which supply us with the building materials for our huts.

To uproot them really does not require any extraordinary power, although we have not yet tried our strength on the stronger trees. However, we have no doubt that they, just like the heaviest and largest rocks, must succumb to our will. Here on

this mountain grows an immense tree, the name of which we of course do not know as well as nothing about its other properties. We are however prepared to find out whether it is possible to uproot it using our willpower alone!"

Old Marcus says: "Now, most obedient servant of all the lords in this world! This is a cedar at least five hundred years old! Seven men would hardly be able to join hands and embrace its girth, and four very strong seasoned loggers would have difficulty in chopping this tree down in two days. Now six men and seven women wish to go over there and to uproot this tree without a mattock or an axe?! Now, this story, if not secretly supported by the almighty will of the Lord, will surely not become a tale to tell!"

I say: "Just be patient, My old warrior! This time too my will shall not be revealed in any way and yet within a short time the tree will be dislodged from the earth with its roots."

While speaking to Marcus, the black people very gently placed their hands on the trunk so that the right hand of one Moor always covered the left hand of his or her neighbor. They remained absolutely quiet for several minutes in this position round the tree. After this time had elapsed, the tree initially began to turn very slowly and, as it did, a tremendous cracking sound could be heard. All those present began to be extremely astonished and nobody understood how to explain this phenomenon, even if only in part.

When the tree, complete with thirteen people lightly clasping it, began to turn more and more it was obvious that the tree with its root cluster and the Moors were already rotating freely in mid-air. Then some spectators, especially the women, began to scream for fear that the falling tree would crush some of the Moors surrounding it.

However, I said to the fearful ones: "Never fear; the tree will be placed very gently on the ground, and nobody will come to any harm as it falls!"

With that they all relaxed and at that moment the clasping Moors released the tree, jumped down the mountain and came back to us. Simultaneously, the tree started to sway back and forth, finally reached its natural center of gravity and after a few moments very softly lay down on the ground.

*When the tree had been uprooted in this way, I also showed the Moors a rock weighing at least five thousand hundred-weight [alias centners (1 centner = 50kg) and said to the leader: "Rise up this rock and place it in the same hole which was created when the tree was uprooted!" (equates to approximately **10,000 lbs.**)*

Quickly the same Moors went to the rock and embraced it just as they had earlier clasped the tree. The rock rose into the air even more quickly than the tree. As it was larger in size, it was of course embraced by a larger number of Moors, but it was clear to everyone that a thousand of the strongest men would still be totally unable to lift the weight of this rock.

In a very few minutes, the rock was standing firmly in the hole and the Moors hurried back to us. The leader then asked Me if there was something else, they should do.

However, I pretended that I was thinking something over, which the leader immediately noticed, saying to Me: "Oh, some highly significant event will surely take place as You are seeking Your own council! Otherwise, it would have been our

opinion that everything is exceedingly clear to a god from the beginning of time as to what He wishes to do!"

I reply: "Yes, that is so! But I was only offering you some respite as what I still wish you to perform for Me has always been your least favorite task. You need to rest after these two demanding tasks which took a heavy toll on your interactive external sphere of your lives. Now refreshed you must show us how you prepare a fire and are also masters of this element! Go start a fire and in so doing demonstrate that you rule that element!"

Straightaway all the Moors present formed a semicircle around a large bush which had already been very dry for some time and stretched their hands and fingers like rays towards its center. Within a few moments the bush began to smolder; the smoke became increasingly intense and suddenly the bush burst into flames. When, however, the bush was burning well with leaping flames, all the Moors formed a closed circle around the fire and lay face down on the ground. In a moment the fire went out so completely that not one single glowing little spark was to be seen anywhere in the whole half-burnt bush.

The Moors then came back and asked Me whether they had performed their task satisfactorily. I gladly testified that they had. They immediately wished to hear more teachings from My mouth, but I indicated to them that they should wait a little, as I felt I should first explain their abilities to the white people. The moors were satisfied with that, and we returned to our tables."

The Miraculous Power of Resurrection- rebirth of the soul

Re: "The Great Gospel of John" Vol. 4:ch 225 by Jakob Lorber

Jesus is speaking: "The ability of these Moors to feel and to have insight can extend over a large area if they are very excited and they can therefore easily determine which spirit's children are approaching them. They are not, however, able to recognize a deeper spiritual being in someone, but they will certainly know the true nature of his soul!

When they arrived here this morning, they had already recognized My soul and its wisdom and power from quite a distance, but they could not evaluate the spirit within the soul as God's spirit can only be recognized by another spirit coming from God. I first had to light a spark in their hearts through My word; and when that spark found its proper food in abundance in a perfected soul, it became more intense. They recognized Me in My spirit and are now more certain than you about the being in Me with whom they are dealing.

All this is the result of a perfected soul. With a few exceptions, your souls in themselves will never achieve a comparable level of cognition, but they will be purified by My overpowering love for you to ensure their suitability to accept My spirit completely. If you are then reborn in spirit, it will not be your achievement, but it will be only through My love and My benevolence and compassion, that you will be able to complete more important tasks than these Moors, but not using a power generated by your perfected souls, but using the majesty of My spirit to permeate your weak souls which will of course be forever strengthened in the process!

However, I do not want to make miracle workers out of you, but true benefactors of mankind! If My spirit is aroused in you to become fully active, your minds will be filled with light and brightness and you will therefore quite normal

paths in nature to learn about her powers and make her spirits serve you - or alternatively provide for you the spiritual primordial substances specifically required to achieve the great worldly advantages in life, which you should use in your benevolence to poorer human beings!

If the great advantages towards which My spirit will lead you are utilized in accordance with My ordinances, the blessings they bring shall be increased a thousand-fold in all ways. If, however, you in time begin to use them selfishly and in contravention of My ordinances, they will become the breeding ground for mankind of every conceivable evil on earth.

What I am now saying to you, I will also repeat to all those who will follow you in a thousand or even two thousand years, give or take a few years. After that another stratum will begin to ferment and till the earth, either with or without mankind, as the earth is large and there are many spirits on it who are waiting for judgement on their destiny.

Everyone who is reborn can also perform miracles - not as these Moors do without knowing My name or My will – *but fully respecting My name and My will and My unchangeable order. If someone were to wish for something different, it could not happen as My spirit within him would not support him. It would only be a selfish desire in the soul because the spirit's wishes could never be contrary to My will!*

However, the rebirth of the spirit in the soul does not cause the soul to lose its own free will and its perception in the sequences of major creations which will continue to go forth generated by My love and by My wisdom, order, power, and strength."

The Composition of the Human Brain and Pyramids

Ref: "The Great Gospel of John" Vol. 4: Ch 232 by Jakob Lorber

Jesus is speaking: "Now we shall see if we are able to obtain a setup of little brain cell receptors to improve your understanding! Indeed, Raphael could fetch a couple of natural human heads from Rome for us as two major criminals have just been beheaded in Rome on the Capitol! However, the skulls of villains would help us very little or even not at all!

It is preferable that the angel should bring us four completely white and totally pure pebbles from any stream. From these we will try to produce a human brain, as far as this is possible with material things. - Raphael, go and bring us what is required!"

Raphael suddenly vanished for about seven moments but suddenly he was back with us and placed four completely snow-white pebbles in front of us, by that I mean in front of Me, on the table. Two were larger and two were smaller, corresponding to the larger frontal lobes of the brain for visual images and the smaller back lobes for the images of sound.

When the stones lay before Me in the right order, I touched them, and they became transparent like very pure rock crystal. I then breathed on them, and they broke into millions of little four-sided pyramids, each one consisting of three lateral faces and a base.

The two stones arranged on My right represented the brain in good order and the two to My left the brain with deficiencies caused by an inappropriate upbringing and other bad influences in later life, as is usually the case with people.

However, there were not only pyramids visible, but besides the few pyramids nearly all the three-dimensional forms, figures and types known to those skilled in measurement were to be seen and were even more easily distinguished after I had breathed on them and thus enlarged them ten times. Now there were four very large assemblies lying as they had been arranged in front of the very surprised disciples at the table which Raphael of course had to enlarge considerably and very quickly for this purpose.

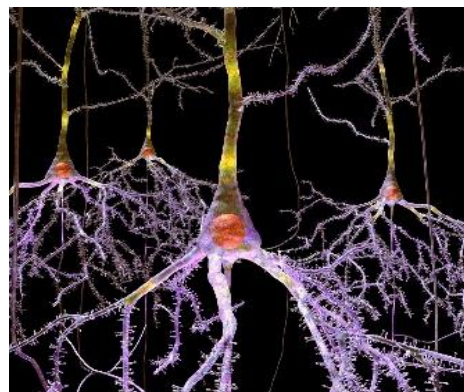
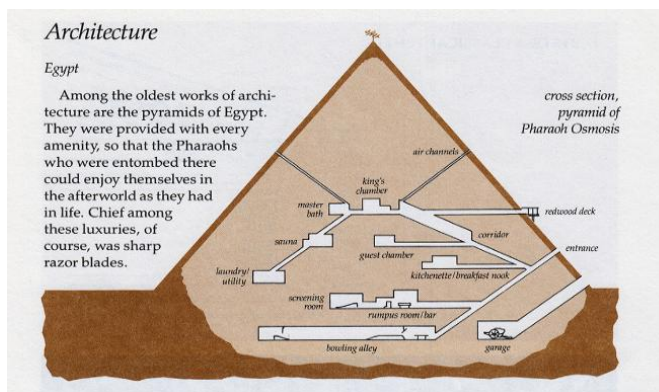
I said: "Now you can look at the receptor shapes for all four brain piles individually and easily distinguishable!"

Look, we have here to the right the large frontal lobe made up of a number of regular pyramids, and also the small lobe at the rear with the same pyramids, - they are just a third of their size but still large enough to receive all the air vibration values required by the soul.

However, now look at the two piles on My left! There are already quite a number of different forms, as I mentioned before, and nowhere do they fit together properly; here and there, you see gaps which give rise to all kinds of misleading reflections as you will see later. The rear lobe, very similar in size to the frontal one, also has receptors which are only one third as large as the frontal ones – and just look at the shapes!"

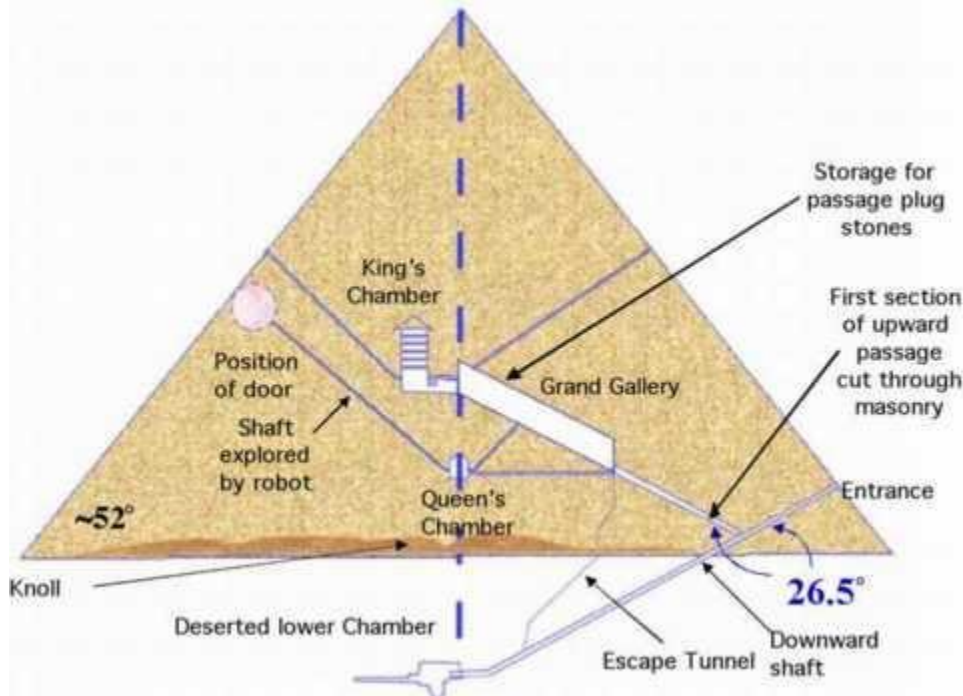
Now they all crowd together to look at the brain assemblies formed from the four pebbles which I had enlarged. Initially there were only the little pyramid receptor shapes to be seen, but without the inner lobe separations or the interconnection of the little receptors.

(The Lord:) "Once all of you have understood this as clearly as possible, I will divide the little receptors into cells by breathing on them again and will connect the receptors in each cell according to their polarity, then link the cells themselves and also the frontal lobe with the rear one so that the little receptors, no matter which type they are, can receive pictures and symbols."



Cyrenius is so amazed that he is not able to regain his composure and finally says: "Ah, I now understand! *The ancient Egyptians, who built their schools in the shape of pyramids, were most probably still primordially perfected people in their souls and therefore enlightened with the result that they could see their body's organic construction! These pyramid shapes, which are so important for people to*

recognize therefore had to be visible and this is why they chose this shape for their extraordinary schools. Of course, they also would have seen and studied the construction of each **brain cell pyramid** in great detail and would also have given the interior of each pyramid the same design with the largest scale, just as they visualized the organic construction of the brain cell pyramids!



Therefore, a pyramid in its interior has a very large number of various passageways and chambers so that even a very erudite person could not possibly work out the purpose for which any one of them was designed! Lord, have I judged this correctly?!"

I say: "Completely right and correct; that is how it was. The Egyptians therefore also decorated the interiors especially with all kinds of symbols, scriptures, and pictures on the walls. These appropriately represented all kind of things which man in the flesh must survive or fight for on this earth and how he must get to know himself and how it is true love that is the focal point of all life."

About the growth of the Outer Life Sphere of Man

Ref: "The Great Gospel of John" Vol.4: Ch: 261 by Jakob Lorber

Jesus is speaking: "But the ability to talk to animals does not necessarily require to be Moors. Also, the whites can achieve this if they have completely purified themselves. Once a soul is completely pure and therefore also completely healthy and strong, it begins to push so to speak the excess of its outer-life-sphere over the borders of its body, and the more life-stronger it has become the further the reach.

This should be taken as someone imagines a still weakly glowing coal in a completely dark room. The piece of coal will now spread just enough light that one can hardly see where it lies. If one blows away the darkening ash as a so to speak soul-matter from its surface, the light will already become stronger and reach a little further, so that one begins to clearly recognize the immediate vicinity. If one

increases the blowing more and more, from its light glowing surface there will be sufficient light that one to some extent can begin to clearly discern the various items in the whole room. If the coal is then made white flame glowing, it will become quite bright in the whole room, and one will be able to distinguish all the items sufficiently illuminated according to their color.

It is the same with a pure soul. The glowing ash covered with coal resembles a soul completely submerged in the flesh. It uses all its matt glowing life-fire to form the dark matter surrounding it, leaving as good as nothing for the formation of an outer-life-sphere! And such a very material soul can impossibly ever feel something about a special and higher property. In this case there is nothing about any mastery over all creatures, similar there is nothing regarding the seeing in the spheres of the soul-like life dimensions, nothing with the hearing of an inner spiritual voice and even less so the understanding of any animal or plant language, all things which were so familiar to the patriarchs like to you the most familiar outer form of things or any case. Since what should be lively illuminated by the spiritual outer-life-sphere of the soul, if it is supposed to be self-shining, cannot produce sufficient life-light-ether, to see itself and who it is?!

Such a soul in the end nearly does not know anything of its own existence, does not at all know its base, and if it hears anything spiritual about herself, it disgusts it; she frightens to a kind of fainting if it sees something which resembles anything of a departed soul, and despairs at the sight of great miracles. What should become of such a soul?

Ah, when however, a soul, after it has received a warranted message from somewhere or has been breezed spiritually by self-conviction and becomes life glowing like the coal indicated above, it begins firstly to feel itself as a soul and recognizes the ground on which it is based. If the breeze becomes stronger and stronger, it, as itself lighter and lighter, will recognize her individuality more brightly, purer, and more discernible from matter, and her light will begin to reach beyond herself and will begin to illuminate her outer-life-sphere.

The more intense and the more constant the spiritual life winds kindle the soul, the more life-white-glowing and the further away beyond herself the outer life-light-sphere becomes illuminated and brighter, and whatever steps into the outer-life-light-sphere will also become soul-life illuminated and is soon and easily recognized and well assessed by the illuminating soul.

Once the soul has reached for itself the highest possible light, thus similar to the flaming and white-glowing coal, its outer-life-light-sphere, outgoing from only the soul, will have reached the furthest possible and most intensified expansion, by which means it already becomes a ruler of all creatures, because by means of such its outer-life-light-sphere it can engage in a perfectly intelligent and most powerful effectuating correspondence with all creatures standing close by."



The Shining outer Life Sphere of Moses and the Patriarchs

Ref: "The Great Gospel of John" Vol.4: Ch: 262 by Jakob Lorber

Jesus is speaking: "The old, devout patriarchs had such a strong outer-life-light sphere, that they were shining at night, also for the eyes of the flesh. Moses' soul shone by day because of his fiery love for God so bright, after he had to do with God on Sinai, that his face radiated more delightfully and brighter than the light of the sun at midday, and Moses had to cover his face with a threefold blanket, so that the other people could look at him. Moses' soul has afterwards reached the highest perfection among the people of this earth; therefore, all creatures had to obey him most precisely. He was standing in the most intelligent correspondence with all creatures, by that also found My will everywhere, showed it to the blind people and indicated to them precisely the way, on which every person could reach the perfection of his soul, if he only wanted it firmly enough. For this purpose, he founded a separate prophet school, which still exists today, but of course in the same manner as the new, false ark, since the real one by Moses has long since lost its power and effect.

If Moses also could have reached the rebirth of the spirit in his highly perfected soul, which he only can become part of, when I have risen just like Elijah, however without a fire carriage, this greatest of all prophets on this earth could have determined new orbits for all the stars, and the great suns would have to submit to his will, just like the waves of the red sea, and just like the hard granite rock had to give a rich water fountain where Moses wanted it; since he ordered the banned spirits of the rock, and they understood the tongue of Moses well and became active after recognizing his will.

That the old wise could not only correspond mainly with animals, but also with all plants and even with rocks and metals, with the water, with the air, with the fire and with all spirits of the earth, is testified by very trustworthy witnesses from the whole script, namely the book of the judges, the prophets, the five books of Moses and still a lot of other books and recordings and of course some already strongly distorted traditions of the people. The artificially constructed conversations with grass, trees, rocks, and water by the Essenes in their miracle gardens, is nothing else than a bare imitation of what once existed in reality!

These blacks have now shown it to you from all angles, the state of power of an unspoilt human soul, and I Myself have now explained manifold the reason to you as clear as sunshine, and therefore I'm of the opinion that you can accept this an absolute truth, and this even more so, if I tell you that this has taken place with people in the past, still takes place and will take place in future.

At the same time, you still today have living proof with your shepherds, because some prudent shepherds guide their herds by peculiar names and noises, let them recognize their will and the herds suddenly act accordingly. Does the donkey or the ox, even if somewhat slow, not understand the signs of its master and guide completely? Who does not know that even the fierce lion always recognizes his benefactor and never, even in its fiercest rage, will harm him in any way? This proves, that the animals in their own way, also have an understanding, an appraisal and often a very sharp ability of recognition and at many opportunities indicate to people, awaiting dangers, by all kinds of gestures and often by striking contumacies and save people if they pay attention to it.

From where originated the haruspices (sacrifice interpreters) among the heathens who are still today want to recognize all kinds of things from the song and flight of birds and from the gesticulations of other animals? These are shadows of a former reality, of which we just spoke."

The Purpose of the Lord's Profound Precepts

Ref: "The Great Gospel of John" Vol.4: Ch: 263 by Jakob Lorber

Jesus is speaking: "I'm not explaining this to you to take you back to the primordial circumstances of the first people of the earth, but only therefore, to place you again on the level of pure knowledge while such occurrences still can take place, so that you do not need to believe this in a superstitious miraculous way, but rather to assess this according to the full and quite natural truth and act accordingly. Since if one day you would come with the spreading of My teaching to people like these blacks who are now before us, and you would see them committing actions which you just now have seen sufficiently, you would soon be overwhelmed to such an extent, that you would allow it to be preached another gospel by such miracle performing people and soon deviate from My ways and thereby hardly ever reach the rebirth of the spirit, instead of bringing My gospel to the foreign people.

However, if you know about everything, how things were and took place in the world, still are and will happen, the danger to be misled cannot happen that easily, except you would allow yourself to be deceived by a newly awoken self-interest, which of course would, correctly concluded, cause your downfall.

You do not need to perfect your souls for the sake to be able to perform all the properties of the forefathers faithfully explained to you - since this does not give to any soul a true, blissful everlasting life because from now on every one of you has the very new reason to perfect and purify his soul, to reach, by the actual observance of My word, the conditional rebirth of the spirit in his entire soul. Whoever achieved this suddenly has more of the most wonderful abilities in himself than all the old fathers ever possessed despite all their soul perfection! He will within one moment more easily view all-star-worlds and suns and even hear and understand their still most far away language, than the old seers and miracle performers could see and assess in their closest country vicinity.

Yes, they performed miracles, - but did not understand them. They were powerful but were not able to recognize the strength and could apply it only then correctly and useful, if by times they have been awakened by My penetrating spirit for it. They often also made use of their strength, even if it was not necessary, almost like the children who during their playful activities often apply more strength, which never ever can be of any use to them, except perhaps to exercise their natural strength.

However, it is completely different with the omnipotent strength of the spirit, once completely reborn into the soul, being inborn; since by that he enters in full unity of My infinite and eternal omnipotence, My love and My wisdom, insight, recognition and My will! Once he is in full possession of all this as My most true child, how could he still have a wish in himself, to effectuate things, which once the old fathers, just like these Moors now, could perform only piece by piece and imperfectly?!

That you are not capable of it anymore is not due to your will, but the time and its wrong customs. Therefore, I now have come Myself, to give to you for the lost small paradise, the whole heaven of the purest and mightiest spirit out of Myself, and I think on your behalf, that you can be completely content with this!

Of course, to achieve the spiritualization of your soul, it will require a lot of hard work and activity; and when it concerns the specific and extremely certain attainment of the biggest and highest property of life, you can endure a few things! Since all the wondrous properties of a perfected human soul and all the treasures of this earth, cannot be called a smallest dew drop in comparison to the large ocean of the world, when precisely following My word and will, awaiting you with much greater certainty than the physical death of your body, which in any way will embarrass you less, than it embarrasses you, to leave an old, rotten and every hour ready collapsing house and to move into a new house forever and ever, which cannot be damaged by any storms.

Verily I say it to you: All reborn out of My word and actions afterwards shall not feel the death of the body nor having anxiously premonitions about it like the world people and some animals, because they will voluntarily leave the body, when I, requiring them for higher purposes, call them from this world into My house! - Have you now taken all this to heart and understand it?"

Say all: "Yes, Lord, You our highest love, You our everything! Everything, everything we give for Your love, for Your endless big mercy, which You have given to us here! We surely would not know what to ask any more!"

Now we can understand why the large Egyptian statues had all their noses broken off and that's because they represented the black race that still had the primordial gifts of God and with their super strength were instrumental in building the gigantic statues and the pyramids!



Of the Ascension of Jesus.

Ref: The Great Gospel of John as presented to Jakob Lorber Ch: 16

Jesus is speaking: "But I say to you that it will nonetheless be constantly difficult to remain with the purest naked truth; for the world wisdom which in several places will become very acute will not understand how I can be the same person spiritually who once gave Moses the Law on Sinai under thunder and lightning and dictated to him the five books and who supports and rules all eternity with His wisdom, power, and strength! Even many of you who are all witnesses to everything that happens here and what has happened in other places do not realize that *I am one with the Father in heaven*. What will the great wise men of the world say to that when such evidence reaches their ears from a thousand mouths?!

Therefore, only the simple-minded are informed, and not the wise of the world, for what is great for the world is a horror before God!

The plain and simple person who still has as pure a heart as possible has obviously a freer soul and a freer spirit in the soul and understands more easily and

quickly what belongs to the spirit; but a worldly wise man whose soul is nailed up with sheer material knowledge and no longer has a divine spirit will certainly not understand what you, for the most part, easily understood and understand in the correct depth. Nonetheless you still do not understand everything, but after My ascension you will understand it completely!"

Here Cyrenius immediately asks, "What sort of ascension do you mean? Will you ascend to the king of all kings on Earth and be crowned?"

I say, "That's right, but not to a king of the world and also *not with a crown of gold!* Don't I have the power to take for Myself a kingdom on Earth which would reach over all the ends of the Earth? Who could stop Me?

Is the essence of all things not in the hand of My Father, who is in Me as I am in Him and likewise the life of all people? How many breaths could you take without the will of My spirit, who alone enlivens and maintains everything?!

What was the use of the people in the time of Noah all their power and fine warfare? You see, My spirit let the flood come over all the kings and their people and they were all buried!

What good to the powerful Pharaoh was all his great army? My spirit allowed the Israelites to cross the Red Sea without getting wet and the following army of the Pharaoh drowned!

So, if I wanted to be the king of this Earth, what power could ever stop me?

But such a thing is far from Me and from everyone who wants to follow me; quite another ascension and coronation awaits Me, about which you will first find out details when it happens. I have already given you some hints right at the beginning of our meeting; so, if you remember you will be able to imagine the rest!"

Cyrenius says, "But Lord, I now know who and what You are, and what You can do - but I still don't understand basically why You flee from Herod and from those of the temple when you have so much power?

I say, "Friend, you could have saved yourself this question! Firstly, because I already explained it to you more than enough in Nazareth, and secondly you should finally have understood from My speeches that I did not come to this world to make the dead more dead than they already are, but to bring others to life everywhere; thus, from now on no one should be sentenced. For I am now here to take on all the judgment that has been made over this earth, and all people should find salvation from eternal death through My taking of the judgment.

So, I am not here to beat (lay about one), instead to heal every possible wound of humanity which is beset by a thousand evils, and not to fustigate it even more.

Do you think that I flee out of fear of My persecutors? Oh, if that is what you believe, you are greatly mistaken! Look at the many serious criminals! Truly, according to Moses and your Law they have deserved death a thousand times over; and yet I do not allow that to happen now, that they should be killed, instead they should receive the mercy of heaven. If they make use of the mercy then they will also have a place in My kingdom; but if they fall by the wayside with time, they will have themselves to blame if the curse and strength of the law kills them! For look, the Law lasts forever, mercy comes only from time to time to help the people in distress; but when the mercy is not respected, one has to fall back again on the Law."

Suggestions for the Mission.

Ref: Vol. 2 The Soul and Life of Adam and Cain – Ch 8:341

(The Lord) "Remember this! If you come to a place where there are very beautifully formed and dressed-up people of both sexes, it is best to move on; for there is no business for the Kingdom of God, because there at least half of Sodom and Gomorrah are in force! The punishment of God is never far from such a place; for such flesh linked souls, which for the greatest part have laid all their conscience in the grave of their bodies, are to bound up through and through. And if their beautiful flesh is touched even only very slightly by the evil, rough and still very uneducated natural spirits of the air, such bound up souls can muster no defense and succumb along with their flesh which is much more susceptible and thin-skinned than the flesh of the body of a free soul.

Go there and grab a tender town maid firmly by the arm or an any other body part and she will cry with pain; if you go out to the country however to a farmer who besides his work also takes care for his children" souls and his own, there you can grab the hand of the man and those of his children as firmly as you want and shake it and he will let out no great cry of pain or fear!

You probably think that such insensitivity comes from heavy work and the hardening through it?! Oh no, I tell you; instead, the hardness is only a consequence of the soul freed from the flesh through self-denial, by which then the correct toughness of the flesh also comes into being.

But wherever all concern for the tenderness of the flesh exists and even some schools exist in which the body can be made as tender as possible through all sorts of gymnastics and as smooth through all sorts of ointments and oils, there is no free soul any longer; and if only a slight wind of poison comes over such terribly weak bodies, then death reaps its harvest.

Then people complain and moan and one half-believing person after the other opens his mouth and says: But what sort of pleasure can God have that He tries to kill the people with all sorts of torture?! Either there is no God, or God is too exalted and no longer cares for the creatures of the Earth, or God is hungry for sacrifices and incense, one has to satisfy Him with rich sacrifices, magical words and incense! Or God has become angry and is taking His revenge now on the harmless weak humanity; one has to do penance in full and cast at least twelve sacrificial goats in the Jordan each year!

But then no-one thinks that all this suffering, all sickness, all wars, all price increases, hunger, and plague come from the fact that people do everything only for their bodies instead of for their souls and their spirit according to God's order!

Yes, they preach the fear of God to dead souls, in whom (God) the preacher, soul dead himself, no longer believes. Because he only believes in what he gets for preaching and what honor and what reputation a well-studied position as preacher could bring. And so, one blind leads the other and a dead man wants to make another dead man alive. The first preaches for his body, and the other obeys the teaching for the sake of his body. But what sort of advantage can there be for an extremely sick soul?

I am a savior; how, the dead and the blind people are asking, can this be possible? And I tell you that I do not heal the flesh of people, but instead wherever some soul is still left mixed with the flesh I make the soul free and awaken, as far as

possible, the spirit buried in the soul. This immediately strengthens the soul which becomes free, and it is then an easy thing to set the correct order to the afflictions of the flesh in one moment.

That is what one calls a miracle healing, while it is only the most ordinary and natural healing of the flesh in the world! What someone has, that he can give; what he does not have, that he cannot give!

Whoever has a living soul according to the order of God and a free spirit in it, he can make his brother's soul free if it is not too embodied, and this helps the sick fleshly body. If the doctor of souls himself has a very sick soul, which is more dead than alive, how could he give someone else's soul what he is lacking himself?! Think about this!

I have now shown you the conditions for becoming my disciples, and the ills of the world down to their truest and deepest foundation. Now do what you want! I neither take you to be my disciples nor do I refuse you to become such. *If you want to become my disciple you must first make your soul free and strong, otherwise the discipleship of my teaching will do you no good!"*



**Whoever has a living soul according to the order of God and a free spirit in it,
he can make his brother's soul free if it is not too embodied,
and this helps the sick fleshly body.**

This is the Voice of the Teacher

"It roars and caresses. It roars when it is addressed to those who do not want to be converted. It caresses when it speaks to those who, though imperfect, have the 'good will' to find God and his Word and, having found them, to sanctify themselves. For these it becomes the caress of a Friend and the blessing of Jesus."

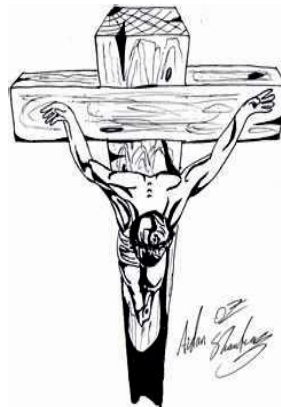
Ref: PMG V5:923

"Unfortunately, the world does not want to be saved. Only one in a thousand will be willing to know Me, and only one in ten thousand will really follow Me. And I will say even more. I will not be known even by My most intimate friends; To know means to love with loyalty and virtue." Ref: PMG Vol.1-46

As we enter into the period of the great tribulation, we need to hear the word of the Lord proclaimed clearly and forcefully like a clear trumpet. **If the bugle's sound is uncertain, who will get ready for the battle?** (1 Cor 14:8). **Who will be able to listen and act? Who will be able to say with Samuel, 'Speak, Lord, for your servant is listening?'** (1 Sam 3:9)

**Harden not your heart and be open to the voice of the Holy Spirit
prepare your soul now for the coming of the Lord**

**"I Am with you always
even unto the end of the world"**



Jesus is speaking: "And I say to you: 'Take,' do take this work and '*do not seal it*' but read it and have it read '*because the time is close*' and let those who are holy become holier. (John, Revelation, 22:10)

May the grace of your Lord Jesus Christ be with all those who in this book see an approach of Mine and urge it to be accomplished, to their defense, with the cry of Love: 'Come, Lord Jesus.'

I will always be with you because it is pleasant to Me to be with those who love Me." MV Vol5: 951

For more detailed information visit:

www.alphaandomegaofcreation.org